



**Manual of Uniform Minimum
Standards for Design,
Construction and Maintenance for
Streets and Highways**

(Commonly known as the Florida Greenbook)

<https://www.fdot.gov/roadway>

FDOT Office
Office of Design
Topic # 625-000-015

Date of Publication
2018 Edition

Florida Department of Transportation

USER REGISTRATION

Manual of Uniform Minimum Standards for Design, Construction and Maintenance for Streets and Highways

(Commonly known as the ***Florida Greenbook***)

2018 Edition

To: Florida Greenbook Users

The Department of Transportation utilizes a contact database that enables the Department to e-mail important information to registered users on topics selected by each user. The database allows a user to update their physical address, e-mail address, topics of interest, and any other information in their profile at any time.

All Florida Greenbook users must register their e-mail addresses in this contact database in order to receive updates, notices, design memos, or other important information concerning the Department's design manuals. Users must register at the following link:

<http://www.fdot.gov/designsupport/ContactDatabase.shtm>

New subscribers will need to create a new account. Once the information is registered, new subscribers will need to "Edit Interests." The Florida Greenbook may be found under: Publications → Design → Roadway Design → Florida Greenbook"

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| User Registration | |
| Florida Greenbook Committee Members | |
| Chapter Subcommittees | |
| Purpose | |
| Policies and Objectives | |
| Definitions of Terms | |
| Chapter 1 | Planning |
| Chapter 2 | Land Development |
| Chapter 3 | Geometric Design |
| Chapter 4 | Roadside Design |
| Chapter 5 | Pavement Design and Construction |
| Chapter 6 | Lighting |
| Chapter 7 | Rail-Highway Crossings |
| Chapter 8 | Pedestrian Facilities |
| Chapter 9 | Bicycle Facilities |
| Chapter 10 | Maintenance and Resurfacing |
| Chapter 11 | Work Zone Safety |
| Chapter 12 | Construction |
| Chapter 13 | Public Transit |
| Chapter 14 | Design Exceptions and Variations |
| Chapter 15 | Traffic Calming |
| Chapter 16 | Residential Street Design |
| Chapter 17 | Bridges and Other Structures |
| Chapter 18 | Signing and Marking |
| Chapter 19 | Traditional Neighborhood Development |
| Chapter 20 | Drainage |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

FLORIDA GREENBOOK COMMITTEE MEMBERS

2018

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee is composed of four professional engineers within each of the Department of Transportation's seven district boundaries as described in Section 336.045(2), Florida Statutes (F.S.).

Section 336.045, Florida Statutes. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.

(2) An advisory committee of professional engineers employed by any city or any county in each transportation district to aid in the development of such standards shall be appointed by the head of the department. Such committee shall be composed of: one member representing an urban center within each district; one member representing a rural area within each district; one member within each district who is a professional engineer and who is not employed by any governmental agency; and one member employed by the department for each district.

Contact information for the Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee members can be found on the Florida Greenbook web page:

<http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FloridaGreenbook/FGB.shtm>

The Florida Greenbook Advisory Committee Members at the time of publication are as follows:

DISTRICT 1

Bernie Masing, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 1

Andy Tilton, P.E.
Water Resource Director
Johnson Engineering, Inc.

Shane Parker, P.E.
Public Works Director
Hendry County

Alexandrea Davis-Shaw, P.E.
City Engineer
City of Sarasota

DISTRICT 2

Kathryn D. Thomas, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

Gene Howerton, P.E.
Vice President
Arcadis U.S., Inc.

Kenneth Dudley, P.E.
County Engineer
Taylor County

John Veilleux, P.E.
Supervising Engineer
City of Gainesville

DISTRICT 3

Rodney Chamberlain, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

Thomas C. Phillips (Chris), P.E.,
County Engineer
Santa Rosa County

Rick Hall, P.E.
Hall Planning and Engineering, Inc.

Keith Bryant, P.E., P.T.O.E.
Public Works Director
Bay County

DISTRICT 4

Steve Braun, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 4

Richard B. Szpyrka, P.E.
Director of Public Works
Indian River County

Robert Behar, P.E.
President
R. J. Behar and Company, Inc.

Richard Tornese, P.E.
County Engineer
Broward County

DISTRICT 5

Marrio Bizzio, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 5

Gail Woods, P.E.
Assistant Vice-President
TransSystems

Billy Hattaway, P.E.,
Transportation Department Director
City of Orlando

Deborah I. Snyder, P.E., P.T.O.E.
Public Works Director
Sumter County

DISTRICT 6

Daniel Iglesias, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 6

Andres Garganta, P.E.
Vice President
WGI

Gaspar Miranda, P.E.
Assistant Director, Highway Engineering
Public Works Department
Miami-Dade County

Juvenal Santana, P.E.
Deputy Director
Department of Resilience and Public
Works
City of Miami

DISTRICT 7

Allan Urbonas, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

Margaret W. Smith, P.E.
Engineering Services Director/
County Engineer
Pasco County

Milton J. Martinez, P.E.
Chief Transportation Engineer
Transportation and Stormwater Services
Department
City of Tampa

Richard Diaz, Jr., P.E.
President
Diaz Pearson & Associates, Inc.

ASSOCIATE MEMBERS

Mark Massaro, P.E.
Director, Public Works Dept.
Orange County

Allen W. Schrumpf, P.E.
Senior Associate
DRMP, Inc.

Ramon D. Gavarrete, P.E.
County Engineer
Alachua County

Charles Ramdatt, P.E., P.T.O.E., AICP
City of Orlando

FACERS REPRESENTATIVE

Faith Alkhatib, P.E.
Public Works Director
Flagler County

COMMITTEE STAFF

Tim Lattner, P.E.
Director, Office of Design
FDOT - Central Office

Michael Shepard, P.E., Chairperson
State Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Mary Anne Koos, CPM
Special Projects Coordinator
FDOT - Central Office

Jeremy Fletcher, P.E., P.S.M.
Quality Assurance Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

CHAPTER TECHNICAL ADVISORS

Gabrielle (Gabe) Matthews
Transit Planning Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Gevin McDaniel, P.E.
Roadway Design Standards Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Chris Wigglesworth
Transit Planner
FDOT - Central Office

Derwood Sheppard, P.E.
Roadway Standard Plans Administrator
FDOT - Central Office

Christine Lofye, P.E.
Manager, Traffic Engineering Division
Orange County Public Works

Frank Kreis, P.E.
District Bituminous Engineer
FDOT - District 3

Amy Harris, P.E.
Special Projects Manager
Traffic Engineering
Palm Beach County

Frank C. Yokiel, AICP
Orange County Public Works
Engineering Division

Luis A. Alván, Esq., P.E.
Senior Engineer
Orange County Public Works
Engineering Division

George Borchik, P.E.
District Roadway Design Engineer
FDOT – District 5

DeWayne Carver, AICP
State Bicycle/Pedestrian Coordinator
FDOT - Central Office

Benjamin J. Gerrell, P.E.
Quality Assurance Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Andre Pavlov, P.E.
Assistant State Structures Design
Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

Alan S. El-Urfali, P.E.
State Traffic Services Program Manager
FDOT – Central Office

Catherine (Katey) Earp, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Patrick Overton, P.E.
Pavement Design Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

Randy Spradling, P.E.
District Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 1

Ed Cashman, P.E.
Standard Plans Engineer
FDOT - Central Office

William Corbett, P.E., P.T.O.E.
City Traffic Engineer
City of Cape Coral

2016 and 2017

In addition to the members noted previously, the following served on the Florida Greenbook Committee in 2014 and 2015.

DISTRICT 1

Ramon D. Gavarrete, P.E.
County Engineer/Utilities Director
Highlands County

Steven Neff, P.E.,
Public Works Director
City of Cape Coral

DISTRICT 2

Jimmy Pittman, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 2

David Cerlanek, P.E., P.T.O.E., C.P.M.
Asst. Public Works Director/Co. Engineer
Alachua County

DISTRICT 3

Jared Perdue, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 3

DISTRICT 4

Howard Webb, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT – District 4

George T. Webb, P.E.
County Engineer
Palm Beach County

DISTRICT 5

Annette Brennan, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 5

Charles Ramdatt, P.E., P.T.O.E., AICP
Deputy Director of Public Works -
Transportation Engineer
City of Orlando

Richard Baier, P.E.
Public Works Director
Sumter County

DISTRICT 6

Chris Tavella, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 6

DISTRICT 7

Richard Moss, P.E.
District Design Engineer
FDOT - District 7

CENTRAL OFFICE

Chester Henson, P.E.
State Traffic Standards Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

Andre Goins, P.E.
State Rail Operations and Programs
Administrator

Rochelle Garrett, P.E.
District 7 Traffic Design Engineer
FDOT – District 7

Rick Jenkins, P.E.
Drainage Design Engineer
FDOT – Central Office

CHAPTER SUBCOMMITTEES

The Chapter Chairs at the time of publication are as follows:

| <u>Chapter</u> | <u>Chair</u> |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Planning | Rick Hall |
| 2. Land Development | Ricard Tornese |
| 3. Geometric Design | Andy Garganta |
| 4. Roadside Design | Robert Behar |
| 5. Pavement Design and Construction | Margaret Smith |
| 6. Lighting | Bernie Masing |
| 7. Rail-Highway Crossings | Daniel Iglesias |
| 8. Pedestrian Facilities | Mario Bizzio |
| 9. Bicycle Facilities | Mario Bizzio |
| 10. Maintenance and Resurfacing | Allan Urbonas |
| 11. Work Zone Safety | Daniel Iglesias |
| 12. Construction | John Veilleux |
| 13. Public Transit | Milton Martinez |
| 14. Design Exceptions and Variations | Howard Webb |
| 15. Traffic Calming | Billy Hattaway |
| 16. Residential Street Design | Margaret Smith |
| 17. Bridges and Other Structures | Keith Bryant |
| 18. Signing and Marking | Gail Woods |
| 19. Traditional Neighborhood Development | Rick Hall |
| 20. Drainage | Andy Tilton |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

PURPOSE

The purpose of this Manual is to provide uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all transportation facilities off the State Highway System (SHS), roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks, bicycle facilities, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic as directed by **Sections 20.23(3)(a), 316.0745, 334.044(10)(a), and 336.045, F.S.**

The Florida Greenbook encourages context-based transportation planning and design. Context-based planning and design offers a diverse approach using existing tools in creative ways to improve the transportation system and meet the needs of users of all ages and abilities. This includes pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers. Planning and design of streets and highways must be based on the surrounding development patterns for existing and planned land development patterns. The approach also considers community needs, trade-offs between those needs, and alternatives to achieve multiple objectives. Context-based design principles help to promote safety, quality of life, and economic development.

In the following statutory excerpts, the term "Department" refers to the Florida Department of Transportation.

Section 20.23, F.S. Department of Transportation. There is created a Department of Transportation which shall be a decentralized agency.

(3)(a) The central office shall establish departmental policies, rules, procedures, and standards and shall monitor the implementation of such policies, rules, procedures, and standards in order to ensure uniform compliance and quality performance by the districts and central office units that implement transportation programs. Major transportation policy initiatives or revisions shall be submitted to the commission for review.

Section 316.0745, F.S. Uniform signals and devices. –

(1) The Department of Transportation shall adopt a uniform system of traffic control devices for use on the streets and highways of the state. The uniform system shall, insofar as is practicable, conform to the system adopted by the American Association of State Highway Transportation Officials and shall be revised from time to time to include changes necessary to conform to a uniform national system or to meet local and state needs. The Department of Transportation may call upon

representatives of local authorities to assist in the preparation or revision of the uniform system of traffic control devices.

Section 334.044, F.S. Department; powers and duties. The department shall have the following general powers and duties:

(10)(a) To develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, maintenance, and operation of public roads pursuant to the provisions of **Section, 336.045, F.S.**

Section 336.045, F.S. Uniform minimum standards for design, construction, and maintenance; advisory committees.

(1) The department shall develop and adopt uniform minimum standards and criteria for the design, construction, and maintenance of all public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks, where feasible, bicycle ways, underpasses, and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. In developing such standards and criteria, the department shall consider design approaches which provide for the compatibility of such facilities with the surrounding natural or manmade environment; the safety and security of public spaces; and the appropriate aesthetics based upon scale, color, architectural style, materials used to construct the facilities, and the landscape design and landscape materials around the facilities.

(2) An advisory committee of professional engineers employed by any city or any county in each transportation district to aid in the development of such standards shall be appointed by the head of the department. Such committee shall be composed of: one member representing an urban center within each district; one member representing a rural area within each district; one member within each district who is a professional engineer and who is not employed by any governmental agency; and one member employed by the department for each district.

(4) All design and construction plans for projects that are to become part of the county road system and are required to conform with the design and construction standards established pursuant to subsection (1) must be certified to be in substantial conformance with the standards established pursuant to subsection (1) that are then in effect by a professional engineer who is registered in this state.

These standards are intended to provide basic guidance for developing and maintaining a highway system with reasonable operating characteristics and a minimum number of hazards.

Standards established by this Manual are intended for use on all transportation facilities off the State Highway System (SHS). Certain projects off the SHS but on the National Highway System (NHS) utilizing federal funds may be required to follow additional design criteria. Please see [Chapter 19](#) of the Department's [Local Agency Program Manual](#) for further information. Information on roadways included in the NHS is found at the Department's website: [National Highway System Maps](#).

Standards are provided for the design of new construction and reconstruction projects as well as maintenance and resurfacing projects. It is understood that existing streets and highways may not conform to all minimum standards applicable to the design of new and reconstruction projects. For existing roads not being replaced or reconstructed, it is intended the requirements provided in **Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing** are applied. For all projects, there may be practical reasons a certain standard is not met. A process is provided in **Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions and Variations** to address those situations.

The Federal Highway Administration's [Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices, 2009 Edition \(MUTCD\)](#), has been adopted by [Rule 14 – 15.010, F.A.C.](#), and establishes a uniform system of traffic control devices. The [Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices \(2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012, MUTCD\)](#) includes additional requirements.

When this Manual refers to guidelines and design standards given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards shall generally be considered as minimum criteria. The Department may have standards and criteria that differ from the minimum presented in this Manual or by AASHTO for streets and highways under its jurisdiction. A county or municipality may substitute standards and criteria adopted by the Department for some or all portions of design, construction, and maintenance of their facilities. Department standards, criteria, and manuals must be used when preparing projects on the state highway system or the national highway system.

Criteria and standards set forth in other manuals, which have been incorporated by reference, shall be considered as requirements within the authority of this Manual.

This Manual is intended for use by qualified engineering practitioners for the communication of standards and criteria (including various numerical design values and use conditions). The design, construction, and maintenance references for the infrastructure features contained in this Manual recognize many variable and often complex process considerations. The engineering design process, and associated use of this Manual, incorporates aspects of engineering judgment, design principles, science, and recognized standards towards matters involving roadway infrastructure.

Users of this Manual are cautioned that the strict application of exact numerical values, conditions or use information taken from portions of the text may not be appropriate for all circumstances. Individual references to design values or concepts should not be used out of context or without supporting engineering judgment.

The contents of this Manual are reviewed annually by the Florida "Greenbook" Advisory Committee. Membership of this committee is established by the above referenced **Section 336.045(2), F.S.** Comments, suggestions, or questions may be directed to any committee member.

POLICIES AND OBJECTIVES

Specific policies governing the activities of planning, design, construction, reconstruction, maintenance, or operation of streets and highways are listed throughout this Manual. This manual uses a context-based design approach that considers the mobility, convenience, accessibility and safety of all road users; and places an emphasis on the most vulnerable users of a given transportation facility. Decisions should be predicated upon meeting the following objectives:

- A. Specifies all users - Provide streets and highways with operating characteristics that support users of all ages and abilities.
 - ✓ Incorporate appropriate context based design elements when planning and designing the transportation network.
 - ✓ Draw on all sources of transportation funding to implement context based design.
 - ✓ Seek input from a variety of local stakeholders when designing or revising transportation projects to promote equity and meet the diverse needs of system users.

- B. Applies to all projects - Each transportation agency should establish and maintain a program to promote context based design in all activities on streets and highways under its jurisdiction.
 - ✓ Planning, design, construction, and maintenance activities are all essential activities for implementing context-based design.

- C. Procedure for exceptions and variations – When proposed design elements do not meet the criteria contained in this Manual, sufficient detail and justification of such deviations must be documented.
 - ✓ Sufficient detail and explanation must be given to justify approval to those reviewing the request.
 - ✓ Consider potential mitigation strategies that may reduce the adverse impacts to highway safety and traffic operations.

- D. Creates a network - Design, operate, and maintain a transportation system that provides a highly connected and diverse network of streets that accommodate all intended modes of travel.
- ✓ Place a priority on connecting communities with economic and employment centers and visitor destinations.
 - ✓ Prioritize non-motorized connectivity improvements to services, schools, parks, civic uses, regional connections, and commercial uses.
 - ✓ Identify routes for freight traffic that provide access to industrial centers, warehouses, distribution centers (rail, freight, intermodal), and ports (airports, seaports, and space ports).
 - ✓ Consider the “last mile” needs of freight handlers and transit riders.
 - ✓ Seek opportunities to repurpose or add new rights of way to enhance connectivity for pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit or shift freight traffic to more appropriate corridors.
- E. Adoptable by all agencies - A well-connected, diverse transportation system supports Florida’s existing and future economic development.
- ✓ Increase productivity by improving the accessibility of people and businesses to reach jobs, services, goods, and activities.
 - ✓ Increase level of accountability for metropolitan, regional, and local agencies to demonstrate the need, economic impact, and return of transportation investments.
 - ✓ Strengthen local policies, ordinances requiring new development or redevelopment to provide interconnected street networks with small blocks that connect with existing or planned streets on the perimeter.
 - ✓ Support regional land use, economic development goals, and regional vision.
- F. Latest and best design criteria - Provide uniformity and consistency in the design and operation of streets and highways.
- ✓ Strive to design and maintain facilities that are consistent with the local context, through single projects or incremental improvements over time.

- ✓ Document conditions that may preclude achieving full multi-modal design, such as environmental, historical or cultural constraints, limited right of way, or disproportionate cost.
 - ✓ Anticipate needs of connected and autonomous vehicles and other emerging technologies.
- G. Context-sensitive - Transportation investments should align with land use, and support a community's quality of life. A context-based approach helps communities and regions make sound decisions which support their long-term vision.
- ✓ Harmonize the transportation system with adjacent existing or proposed context such as neighborhoods, business districts, commercial areas, and public services (schools, parks, health, and entertainment centers).
 - ✓ Design streets with a strong sense of place; use architecture, landscaping, streetscaping, public art, and signage to reflect the community, neighborhood, history, and natural setting.
 - ✓ Highlight natural features such as waterways, trees, scenic views, slopes, and preserved lands and minimize impacts.
- H. Establishes performance measures - Develop and maintain a transportation system that provides a safe environment.
- ✓ Understand that children, elderly adults, and persons with disabilities may require appropriate accommodations.
 - ✓ Establish and maintain procedures for construction, maintenance, utility, and emergency operations that provide for safe operating conditions during these activities.
 - ✓ Use existing street pavement widths as efficiently as possible to accommodate all modes of transportation, recognizing that allocating designated space by mode is preferred, but shared facilities may be the most practical solution in some cases.
- I. Includes specific next steps for implementation.
- ✓ Understand the priorities and concerns by reaching out to stakeholders, collect data, synthesize issues and opportunities, and define context classifications.

- ✓ Define the project's purpose, needs and evaluation measures (i.e., person throughput, network completeness, street connectivity, access to jobs, housing, retail, public facilities).
- ✓ Define and evaluate alternatives.

Additional general and specific objectives related to various topics and activities are listed throughout this Manual. Where specific standards or recommendations are not available or applicable, the related objectives shall be utilized as general guidelines.

DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

The following terms shall, for the purpose of this Manual, have the meanings respectively ascribed to them, except instances where the context clearly indicates a different meaning. The [Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices \(2009 Edition with Revision Numbers 1 and 2, May 2012, MUTCD\)](#) includes additional information on terms used in conjunction with the application of the **MUTCD**.

| | |
|--|--|
| Alley | A narrow right of way to provide access to the side or rear of individual land parcels. |
| Annual Average Daily Traffic (AADT) | The total volume of traffic on a highway segment for one year, divided by the number of days in the year. This volume is usually estimated by adjusting a short-term traffic count with weekly and monthly factors. |
| Average Daily Traffic (ADT) | The total traffic volume during a given time period (more than a day, less than a year) divided by the number of days in that time period. |
| Auxiliary Lane | A designated width of roadway pavement marked to separate speed change, turning, passing, and climbing maneuvers from through traffic. |
| Average Running Speed | For all traffic, or component thereof, the summation of distances divided by the summation of running times. |
| Bicycle Lane (Bike Lane) | A portion of a roadway that has been designated for preferential use by bicyclists by pavement markings, and if used, signs. They are one-way facilities that typically carry traffic in the same direction as adjacent motor vehicle traffic. |

Boarding And Alighting (B&A) Area

A firm, stable, slip resistant surface that accommodates passenger movement on or off a transit vehicle.

Border Area

The border area provides space for roadside design components (e.g., signing, drainage features, sidewalks, and traffic control devices), a buffer between vehicles and pedestrians, and permitted public utilities. It also provides space for construction and maintenance of the facility.

Bridge

A structure, including supports, erected over a depression or an obstruction, such as water, a highway, or a railway, having a track or passageway for carrying traffic or other moving loads, and having a total span of more than 20 feet between undercopings of abutments.

Clear Zone

The unobstructed, traversable area beyond the edge of the traveled way for the recovery of errant vehicles. The clear zone includes shoulders and bicycle lanes.

Context Classification System

Broadly identifies the built environments in Florida, based upon existing and future land use characteristics, development patterns, network scale, and roadway connectivity of an area.

Corridor

A strip of land between two termini within which traffic, topography, environment, population, access management, and other characteristics are evaluated for transportation purposes.

Cross Slope

The transverse slope and/or superelevation described by the roadway section geometry.

| | |
|--|--|
| Crosswalk | Portion of the roadway at an intersection included within the connections of lateral lines of the sidewalks on opposite sides of the highway, measured from the curbs or in the absence of curbs from the traversable roadway. Crosswalks may also occur at an intersection or elsewhere distinctly indicated for pedestrian crossing. |
| Design Hour Volume (DHV) | Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year. The DHV is related to the AADT by the “K” factor. It includes total traffic in both directions of travel. |
| Directional Design Hour Volume (DDHV) | Traffic volume expected to use a highway segment during the design hour of the design year in the peak direction. |
| Design Speed | A selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the roadway. The selected design speed should be a logical one with respect to the topography, anticipated operating speed, adjacent land use, and functional classification of the highway. |
| Design User | Anticipated users of a roadway (including pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers) that form the basis for each roadway’s design. |
| Design Vehicle | A vehicle, with representative weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, used to establish highway design controls for accommodating vehicles of designated classes. |
| Driveway | An access from a public way to adjacent property. |

| | |
|--|--|
| Expressway | A divided arterial highway for through traffic with full or partial control of access and generally with grade separations at major intersections. |
| Federal Aid Highway | A highway eligible for assistance under the United States Code Title 23 other than a highway classified as a local road or rural minor collector. |
| Freeway or Limited Access Highway | An expressway with full control of access. |
| Frontage Road or Street | A street or highway constructed adjacent to a higher classification street or other roadway network serving adjacent property or control access. |
| Grade Separation | A crossing of two roadways or a roadway and a railroad or pedestrian pathway at different levels. |
| High Speed | Speeds of 50 mph or greater. |
| High-Speed Rail | Intercity passenger rail service that is reasonably expected to reach speeds of at least 110 miles per hour. |
| Highway, Street, or Road | General terms, denoting a public way for purposes of traffic, both vehicular and pedestrian, including the entire area within the right of way. The term street is generally used for urban or suburban areas. |
| Intersection | The general area where two or more streets or highways join or cross. |
| Lateral Offset | The lateral distance from the edge of the traveled way or when applicable, face of curb, to a roadside object or feature. |

| | |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Low Speed | Speeds less than or equal to 45 mph. |
| May | A permissive condition. Where "may" is used, it is considered to denote permissive usage. |
| Maintenance | A strategy of treatments to an existing roadway system that preserves it, retards future deterioration, and maintains or improves the functional condition. |
| New Construction | The construction of any public way (paved or unpaved) where none previously existed, or the act of paving any previously unpaved road, except as provided in Chapter 3, Section A of these standards. |
| Operating Speed | The rate of travel at which vehicles are observed traveling during free-flow conditions. |
| Paratransit | Comparable transportation service required by the ADA for individuals with disabilities who are unable to use fixed route transportation systems. |
| Pedestrian Access Route | A continuous and unobstructed path of travel provided for pedestrians with disabilities within or coinciding with a pedestrian circulation path. |
| Pedestrian Circulation Path | A prepared exterior or interior surface provided for pedestrian travel in the public right of way. |
| Preferential Lane | A street or highway lane reserved for the exclusive use of one or more specific types of vehicles or vehicles with at least a specific number of occupants. |
| Public Way | All public streets, roads, highways, bridges, sidewalks, curbs and curb ramps, crosswalks (where feasible), bicycle facilities, underpasses, |

and overpasses used by the public for vehicular and pedestrian traffic.

Ramp

1) Includes all types, arrangements, and sizes of turning roadways that connect two or more legs at an interchange. 2) A combined ramp and landing to accomplish a change in level at a curb (curb ramp).

Reconstruction

Streets and highways that are rebuilt primarily along existing alignment. Reconstruction normally involves full-depth pavement replacement. Other work that would fall into the category of reconstruction would be adding lanes adjacent to an existing alignment, changing the fundamental character of the roadway (e.g., converting a two-lane highway to a multi-lane divided arterial) or reconfiguring intersections and interchanges.

Recovery Area

A clear zone that includes the total roadside border area, starting at the edge of the traveled way, available for safe use by errant vehicles.

Residential Streets

Streets primarily serving residential access to the commercial, social, and recreational needs of the community. These are generally lower volume and lower speed facilities than the primary arterial and collector routes of the local system "or as adopted by local government ordinance".

Resurfacing

Work to place additional layers of surfacing on highway pavement, shoulders, bridge decks and necessary incidental work to extend the structural integrity of these features for a substantial time period.

| | |
|-----------------------|---|
| Right of Way | A general term denoting land, property or interest therein, usually in a strip, acquired or donated for transportation purposes. More specifically, land in which the State, the Department, a county, a transit authority, municipality, or special district owns the fee or has an easement devoted to or required for use as a public road. |
| Roadway | The portion of a street or highway, including shoulders, for vehicular use. A divided highway has two or more roadways. |
| Rural Areas | Those areas outside of urban boundaries. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the <u>Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps</u> . |
| Shall or Must | A mandatory condition. (When certain requirements are described with the "shall" or "must" stipulation, it is mandatory these requirements be met.) |
| Shared Roadway | A roadway that is open to both bicycle, motor vehicle, street cars, and rail travel. This may be an existing roadway, street with wide curb lanes, or road with paved shoulders. |
| Shared Street | Street that includes a shared zone where pedestrians, bicyclists, and motor vehicles mix in the same space. The design supports slower vehicle speeds and lower motor vehicle volumes. It lacks design elements that suggest motor vehicle priority or segregate modes; and includes elements that suggest a pedestrian priority (e.g. gathering areas, seating, lighting, art, special plantings). |

| | |
|---|---|
| Shared Use Path or Multi - Use Trail | A facility with a firm, stable, slip-resistant surface physically separated from motorized vehicular traffic by an open space or barrier with minimal cross flow by motor vehicles. Users may include pedestrians, bicyclists, skaters, and others. Special design and approval is needed when travelers use vehicles such as golf carts or other motorized devices. |
| Should | An advisory condition. Where the word "should" is used, it is considered to denote advisable usage, recommended but not mandatory. |
| Slope | The relative steepness of the terrain, expressed as a ratio or percentage. Slopes may be categorized as positive (backslopes) or negative (foreslopes) and as parallel or cross slopes in relation to the direction of traffic. In this manual slope is expressed as a ratio of vertical to horizontal (V:H). |
| Surface Transportation System | Network of highways, streets, and/or roads. Term can be applied to local system or expanded to desired limits of influence. |
| Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) | TND refers to the development or redevelopment of a neighborhood or town using traditional town planning principles. Projects should include a range of housing types and commercial establishments, a network of well-connected streets and blocks, civic buildings and public spaces, and include other uses such as stores, schools, and places of worship within walking distances of residences. |
| Traffic | Pedestrians, bicyclists, motor vehicles, streetcars and other conveyances either singularly or together while using for purposes of travel any highway or private road open to public travel. |

| | |
|------------------------|---|
| Traffic Lane | Includes travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, turn lanes, weaving, passing, and climbing lanes. |
| Travel Lane | A designated width of roadway pavement marked to carry through traffic and to separate it from opposing traffic or traffic occupying other traffic lanes. Generally, travel lanes equate to the basic number of lanes for a facility. |
| Traveled Way | The portion of the roadway for the movement of vehicles, exclusive of shoulders and bicycle lanes. |
| Turning Roadway | A connecting roadway for traffic turning between two intersection legs. |
| Urban Area | A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside the United States Bureau of the Census boundary of an urban place with a population of 5,000 or more persons, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) regulations. Urban area boundary maps based upon the 2010 Census are located on the Department's Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps . |
| Urbanized Area | A geographic region comprising, as a minimum, the area inside an urban place of 50,000 or more persons, as designated by the United States Bureau of the Census, expanded to include adjacent developed areas as provided for by Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) regulations. Urban areas with a population of fewer than 50,000 persons which are located within the expanded boundary of an urbanized area are not separately recognized. |

| | |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Vehicle | Every device upon, or by which any person or property is or may be transported or drawn upon a traveled way, excepting devices used exclusively upon stationary rails or tracks. Bicycles are defined as vehicles per Section 316.003, Florida Statutes. |
| Vertical Clearance | Minimum unobstructed vertical passage space. |
| Very Low-Volume Road | A road that is functionally classified as a local road and has a design average daily traffic volume of 400 vehicles per day or less. |
| Wide Outside Lane | Through lanes that provide a minimum of 14 feet in width. This lane should always be the through lane closest to the curb or shoulder of the road when a curb is not provided. |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

| | | |
|-------|---|------|
| A | CONTEXT-BASED PLANNING AND DESIGN | 1-1 |
| B | CLASSIFICATION | 1-3 |
| B.1 | Functional Classification | 1-3 |
| B.2 | Context Classification..... | 1-5 |
| B.3 | Design Speed | 1-8 |
| C | CONSIDERATIONS FOR DESIGN | 1-9 |
| C.1 | Safety..... | 1-9 |
| C.2 | Economic Constraints | 1-9 |
| C.3 | Access Requirements | 1-9 |
| C.4 | Measures of Level of Service | 1-10 |
| C.5 | Maintenance Capabilities | 1-10 |
| C.6 | Utility and Transit Operations..... | 1-10 |
| C.7 | Emergency Response..... | 1-11 |
| C.8 | Environmental Impact | 1-11 |
| C.9 | Community and Social Impact | 1-12 |
| D | OPERATION | 1-13 |
| D.1 | Policy | 1-13 |
| D.2 | Objectives | 1-13 |
| D.3 | Activities..... | 1-13 |
| D.3.a | Maintenance and Reconstruction | 1-14 |
| D.3.b | Work Zone Safety..... | 1-14 |
| D.3.c | Traffic Control..... | 1-14 |
| D.3.d | Emergency Response | 1-15 |
| D.3.e | Coordination and Supervision | 1-15 |
| D.3.f | Inspection and Evaluation | 1-15 |
| E | REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES | 1-17 |

TABLES

| | | |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Table 1 – 1 | Functional Classification Types..... | 1-4 |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|-----|

FIGURES

| | | |
|--------------|------------------------------|-----|
| Figure 1 – 1 | Context Classifications..... | 1-6 |
|--------------|------------------------------|-----|

CHAPTER 1

PLANNING

A CONTEXT-BASED PLANNING AND DESIGN

In 1996, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) released guidance encouraging context-based transportation planning and design. Since then, many regional and local transportation agencies in Florida and throughout the U.S. have adopted context-based planning and design policies and practices. Context-based planning and design offers a flexible approach using existing tools in creative ways to address multimodal needs in different contexts. The approach also considers community needs, trade-offs between those needs, and alternatives to achieve multiple objectives.

The Florida Greenbook's Context-Based Design policy captures three core concepts:

- Serve the needs of transportation system users of all ages and abilities, including pedestrians, bicyclists, transit riders, motorists, and freight handlers.
- Design streets and highways based on local and regional land development patterns that reflect existing and future context.
- Promote safety, quality of life, and economic development.

This Context-Based approach builds on flexibility and innovation to ensure that all streets and highways are developed based on their context classification, as determined by the local jurisdiction to the maximum extent feasible. With a Context-Based approach, every non-limited access transportation project, including those on the Strategic Intermodal System (SIS), is uniquely planned and designed to serve the context of that roadway and the safety, comfort, and mobility of all users.

In a high-speed rural context, where higher truck traffic is anticipated, and walking and bicycling are infrequent, wider travel lanes with paved shoulders are appropriate. Shared use paths as part of a regional trail system or for access to schools or parks may also be needed. In urban contexts, where high volumes of pedestrians, bicyclists, and transit users are expected or desired, a roadway should include features such as wide sidewalks, bicycle facilities, transit stops, and frequent, pedestrian crossing opportunities.

Limited-access highways may incorporate elements of context-based design where they connect to the non-limited-access system.

B CLASSIFICATION

Designs for transportation projects are based on established design controls for the various elements of the project such as width, side slopes, horizontal and vertical alignment, drainage, accessibility and intersection considerations.

The design criteria presented in this manual are based on:

- Functional Classification
- Context Classification
- Design Speed

A determination of the functional and context-based design classification of each facility is required prior to the actual design.

B.1 Functional Classification

Functional classification is the grouping of highways by the character of service and connectivity they provide in relation to the total road network. Table 1 – 1 Functional Classification Types summarizes the primary characteristics of each functional classification.

Functional road classifications for Florida are defined in [Section 334.03 F.S.](#) The **AASHTO** publication ***A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)*** presents an excellent discussion on highway functional classifications.

Table 1 – 1 Functional Classification Types

| Functional Classification | Primary Characteristics |
|----------------------------------|--|
| Limited Access Facilities | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Limited access • Through traffic movements • Primary freight routes • Guided by FHWA Design Standards for Highways (NHS) |
| Principal Arterial | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Through traffic movements • Longer distance traffic movements • Primary freight routes • Access to public transit • Pedestrian and bicycle travel |
| Minor Arterial | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connections between local areas and network principal arterials • Connections for through traffic between arterial streets or highways • Access to public transit and through movements • Pedestrian and bicycle travel |
| Collector | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Carry traffic with trips ending in a specific area • Access to commercial and residential centers • Access to public transit • Pedestrian and bicycle travel |
| Local Roads | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Direct property access—residential and commercial • Pedestrian and bicycle travel |

B.2 Context Classification

Projects are uniquely planned and designed to be in harmony with the surrounding land use characteristics and the intended uses of the street or highway. To this end, a context-based classification system comprising eight context classifications has been adopted. Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications describes the context classifications that will determine key design criteria elements. Criteria for limited access facilities are independent of the adjacent land uses; therefore, context classifications shown in Figure 1 – 1 do not apply to these facilities.

Urban and rural are based on population density gathered from the most recent census and mapped as urban area boundaries. Urban areas are considered to have *dense* development patterns, while rural areas are considered to have *sparse* development patterns. The Department's [Urban Area 1-Mile Buffer Maps](#) identify urban and rural areas based on the census data and regional travel patterns.

Additional information on context classifications and guidance on the determination of the context classification is provided in the [FDOT Context Classification Document](#).

To meet local needs and travel demands, deviations in design criteria may be, appropriate for urban streets. **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities, Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities, Chapter 13 – Transit, Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming, Chapter 16 – Residential Street Design, and Chapter 19 – Traditional Neighborhood Development** provides additional information for the design of urban streets.

Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications



C1 – Natural

Lands preserved in a natural or wilderness condition, including lands unsuitable for settlement due to natural conditions.

C2 – Rural

Sparsely settled lands; may include agricultural land, grassland, woodland, and wetlands.

C2T – Rural Town

Small concentrations of developed areas immediately surrounded by rural and natural areas; includes many historic towns.

C3R – Suburban Residential

Mostly residential uses within large blocks and a disconnected or sparse roadway network.

Figure 1 – 1 Context Classifications (continued)



C3C – Suburban Commercial

Mostly non-residential uses with large building footprints and large parking lots. Buildings are within large blocks and a disconnected or sparse roadway network.

C4 – Urban General

Mix of uses set within small blocks with a well-connected roadway network. May extend long distances. The roadway network usually connects to residential neighborhoods immediately along the corridor or behind the uses fronting the roadway.

C5 – Urban Center

Mix of uses set within small blocks with a well-connected roadway network. Typically concentrated around a few blocks and identified as part of the community, town, or city of a civic or economic center.

C6 – Urban Core

Areas with the highest densities and with building heights typically greater than four floors. Many are regional centers and destinations. Buildings have mixed uses, are built up to the roadway, and are within a well-connected transportation network.

B.3 Design Speed

See ***Chapter 3, Section C.1 Design Speed*** for information on establishing appropriate design speeds.

C CONSIDERATIONS FOR DESIGN

The following criteria should be considered and resolved in the initial planning and design of streets and highways. The criteria are not listed in order of priority, and the weighting of each criterion should be based on the context of a project, the available resources, and the users.

C.1 Safety

Functional and context classification play an important role in setting expectations and measuring outcomes for safety. Since agencies consider the type of street or highway in evaluating the significance of crash rates, classification can be used as part of evaluating relative safety and the implementation of safety improvements and programs.

C.2 Economic Constraints

In determining the benefit/cost ratio for any proposed facility, the economic evaluation should go beyond the actual expenditure of highway funds and the capacity and efficiency of the facility. Overall costs and benefits of various alternatives should include an evaluation of all known environmental, community, and social impacts and the quality and cost of the project.

Allocation of sufficient funds for obtaining the proper corridor and adequate right of way and alignment should receive the initial priority. Future acquisition of additional right of way and major changes in alignment are often economically prohibitive. This can result in substandard streets and highways that don't support the community's vision. Reconstruction or modification under traffic may be expensive, inconvenient, or hazardous to the user. This increase in costs, hazards, and inconvenience can be limited by initial development of quality facilities.

C.3 Access Requirements

Degree and type of access permitted on a given facility is dependent upon its intended function and context and should conform to the guidelines in **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design**. Reasonable access control must be exercised to allow a street or highway to fulfill its function. The proper layout of the highway network

and the utilization of effective land use controls (**Chapter 2 – Land Development**) can provide the basis for regulating access.

C.4 Measures of Level of Service

Level of service (LOS) is essentially a measure of the quality of the operating characteristics of a street or highway for each travel mode. Factors involved in determining the level of service include speed and safety, as well as travel time; traffic conflicts and interruptions; freedom to maneuver; convenience and comfort; and operating costs. Level of service is also dependent upon actual traffic volume and composition of traffic (motor vehicles, trucks, transit, bicyclists, and pedestrians).

The **Highway Capacity Manual, 6th Edition** provides further information on assessing the traffic and environmental effects of highway projects.

C.5 Maintenance Capabilities

Planning and design of streets and highways should include provisions for the performance of required maintenance. The planning of the expected maintenance program should be coordinated with the initial highway design to ensure maintenance activities may be conducted without excessive traffic conflicts or hazards.

C.6 Utility and Transit Operations

Utility accommodation within rights of way is generally considered to be in the public's best interest, since rights of way frequently offer the most practical engineering, construction, and maintenance solutions for utility service to businesses and residences. Utility and transit facility locations should be carefully chosen to optimize operations and safety of the transportation facility. Additional information on the design of transit facilities can be found in **Chapter 13 – Transit**.

C.7 Emergency Response

Development of an effective emergency response program is dependent upon the nature of the highway network and the effectiveness of the operation of the system. Provisions for emergency access and communication should be considered in the initial planning and design of all streets and highways. Local emergency response personnel should be included in primary activities.

C.8 Environmental Impact

Construction and operation of streets and highways frequently produces an adverse effect upon the environment. Early consideration and resolution of environmental issues can avoid costly delays and modifications that may compromise the quality and efficiency of operation. Specific topics often encountered include the following:

- Air Quality
- Coastal Zone Resources
- Farmland
- Floodplains
- Hazardous Waste and Brownfields
- Noise
- Roadside vegetation
- Safe Drinking Water Act
- Water Quality
- Watersheds Management
- Wetlands
- Wild and Scenic Rivers and Wilderness Areas
- Wildlife and Threatened and Endangered Species
- Wildlife, Habitat and Ecosystems

C.9 Community and Social Impact

Quality and value of a community is directly influenced by the layout and design of streets and highways. Quality of the network determines the freedom and efficiency of movement. Inadequate design of the network and poor land use practices can lead to undesirable community separation and deterioration. Specific design of streets and highways has a large effect upon the overall aesthetic value which is important to the motorist and resident. When using federal funds for transportation projects, the following considerations should be addressed:

- Corridor Preservation
- Historical and Archaeological Preservation
- Scenic Byways
- [Section 4 \(f\)](#) (parks, refuges and historic sites)
- [Section 6 \(f\)](#) properties
- Visual Impacts

D OPERATION

The concept of operating the existing street and highway network as a system is essential to promote safety, efficiency, mobility, and economy. This requires comprehensive planning and coordination of all activities on each street and highway. These activities would include maintenance, construction, utility operations, public transit operations, traffic control, and emergency response operations. The behavior of travelers should be considered as an integral part of the operation of streets and highways. Coordination of the planning and supervision of each activity on each facility is necessary to achieve safety and efficient operation of the total system.

D.1 Policy

Each transportation agency with general responsibility for existing streets and highways should establish and maintain an operations department. Each existing street or highway should be assigned to the jurisdiction of the operations department. The operations department shall be responsible for planning, supervising, and coordinating all activities affecting the operating characteristics of the system under its jurisdiction.

D.2 Objectives

The primary objective of an operations department shall be to maintain or improve the operating characteristics of the system under its jurisdiction. These characteristics include safety, capacity, and level of service. The preservation of the function of each facility, which would include access control, is necessary to maintain these characteristics and the overall general value of a street or highway.

D.3 Activities

The achievement of these objectives requires the performance of a variety of coordinated activities by the operations department. The following activities should be considered as minimal for promoting the safe and efficient operation of a system.

D.3.a Maintenance and Reconstruction

Maintaining or upgrading the quality of existing facilities is an essential factor in preserving desirable operating characteristics. The planning and execution of maintenance and reconstruction activity on existing facilities must be closely coordinated with all other operational activities and, therefore, should be under the general supervision of the operations department.

All maintenance work should be conducted in accordance with the requirements of **Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing**. The priorities and procedures utilized should be directed toward improvement of the existing system. The standards set forth in this Manual should be used as guidelines for establishing maintenance and reconstruction objectives. All maintenance and reconstruction projects should be planned to minimize traffic control conflicts and hazards.

D.3.b Work Zone Safety

An important responsibility of the operations department is the promotion of work zone safety on the existing system. The planning and execution of maintenance, construction, and other activities shall include provisions for the safety of motorists, bicyclists, pedestrians, and workers. All work shall be conducted in accordance with the requirements presented in **Chapter 11 – Work Zone Safety**.

D.3.c Traffic Control

Traffic engineering is a vital component of highway operations. The planning and design of traffic control devices should be carried out in conjunction with the overall design of the street or highway and highway user. The devices and procedures utilized for traffic control should be predicated upon developing uniformity throughout the system and compatibility with adjacent jurisdictions.

A primary objective to be followed in establishing traffic control procedures is the promotion of safe, orderly traffic flow. The cooperation of police agencies and coordination with local transit providers is essential for the achievement of this objective. Traffic control during maintenance,

construction, utility, or emergency response operations should receive special consideration.

D.3.d Emergency Response

The emergency response activities (i.e., emergency maintenance and traffic control) of the operations department should be closely coordinated with the work of police, fire, ambulance, medical, and other emergency response agencies. The provisions for emergency access and communications should be included in the initial planning for these activities.

D.3.e Coordination and Supervision

Coordination and supervision of activities on the system should include the following:

- Supervision and/or coordination of all activities of the operations department and other agencies to promote safe and efficient operation
- Coordination of all activities to provide consistency within a given jurisdiction
- Coordination with adjacent jurisdictions to develop compatible highway systems
- Coordination with other transportation modes to promote overall transportation efficiency

D.3.f Inspection and Evaluation

The actual operation of streets and highways provides valuable experience and information regarding the effectiveness of various activities. Each operations department should maintain a complete inventory of its system and continuously inspect and evaluate the priorities, procedures, and techniques utilized in all activities on the existing system under its jurisdiction. Activities by other agencies, as well as any agency, should be subjected to this supervision.

Promotion of transportation safety should be aided by including a safety office (or officer) as an integral part of the operations department. Functions of this office would include the identification and inventory of hazardous locations and procedures for improving the safety characteristics of highway operations.

Results of this inspection and evaluation program should be utilized to make the modification necessary to promote safe and efficient operation. Feedback for modifying design criteria should be generated by this program. Experience and data obtained from operating the system should be utilized as a basis for recommending regulatory changes. Cooperation of legislative, law enforcement, and regulatory agencies is essential to develop the regulation of vehicles, driver behavior, utility, emergency response activities, and the access land use practices necessary for the safe and efficient operation of the highway system.

E REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

Design criteria are established for transportation projects to ensure that they provide safe, economical, and fully functional multimodal transportation facilities. Various Department publications contain information on procedures, criteria, and standards for guiding and controlling design and construction activities. There are many local, state, and federal laws and rules that may impact the design of a project. These laws and rules are referenced in the publications when the Department is aware of them.

For situations where specific design standards or criteria cannot be found in the Department publications, current approved technical publications such as **AASHTO's Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)** should be used as design guidelines. Local agencies must ensure that project designs meet or exceed the referenced design criteria and that the standards developed from acceptable guidelines are appropriate for the proposed facility.

The following publications provide further information and guidance for Roadway and Bridge/Structure designs:

- FDOT Design Manual, (Topic No. 625-000-002)
<http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FDM/>
- Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction (Topic No. 625-010-003)
<http://www.fdot.gov/design/standardplans/>
- FDOT Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Construction
<https://www.fdot.gov/programmanagement/Specs.shtm>
- Project Development and Environment Manual Part 1 and Part 2 (Topic No. 650-000-001)
<http://www.fdot.gov/environment/pubs/pdeman/pdeman1.shtm>
- AASHTO Highway Safety Manual, 1st Edition (AASHTO Bookstore HSM-1)
<https://bookstore.transportation.org/>
- Standard Highway Signs (FHWA)
http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/ser-shs_millennium.htm

- Highway Functional Classification: Concepts, Criteria and Procedures, 2013 Edition (FHWA)
http://www.fhwa.dot.gov/planning/processes/statewide/related/highway_functional_classification/section00.cfm
- Quality/Level of Service Handbook (FDOT, 2013)
<http://www.fdot.gov/planning/systems/programs/sm/los/default.shtm>
- Manual on Uniform Traffic Studies (Topic No. 750-020-007)
<http://www.dot.state.fl.us/trafficoperations/Operations/Studies/MUTS/muts.shtm>
- Surveying Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-101)
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm
- Right of Way Mapping Procedure (Topic No. 550-030-015)
http://www.dot.state.fl.us/surveyingandmapping/doc_pubs.shtm

CHAPTER 2 LAND DEVELOPMENT

| | | |
|-------|--|------|
| A | INTRODUCTION | 2-1 |
| B | OBJECTIVES | 2-3 |
| C | PRINCIPLES AND GUIDELINES | 2-4 |
| C.1 | Development Types and Area Types | 2-4 |
| C.1.a | Conventional Suburban Design | 2-4 |
| C.1.b | Traditional Neighborhood Design (TND) | 2-4 |
| C.1.c | Transit-Oriented Design (TOD) | 2-4 |
| C.2 | Network Design | 2-5 |
| C.3 | Access Control | 2-6 |
| C.4 | Land Use Controls and Space Allocation | 2-7 |
| D | COORDINATION | 2-9 |
| E | CONTROL TECHNIQUES | 2-10 |
| E.1 | Right of Way Acquisition | 2-10 |
| E.2 | Regulatory Authority | 2-10 |
| E.2.a | General Regulatory Requirements | 2-10 |
| E.2.b | Specific Control | 2-11 |
| E.3 | Contracts and Agreements | 2-11 |
| E.4 | Education | 2-11 |
| F | REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES | 2-12 |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 2

LAND DEVELOPMENT

A INTRODUCTION

A major portion of street and highway construction and reconstruction is a result of land development for residential, commercial, industrial, and public uses. The general land use layout influences, and is controlled by, connections to adjacent road networks with different transportation modes. Techniques, principles, and general layout used for any development also dictate the resulting internal road network. The arrangement and space allocations for this network may determine whether safe, efficient, and economical streets and highways are constructed or reconstructed.

Land development practices should promote high quality street networks that provide interconnectivity and access control. The street network shall be designed for the safety of all road users – pedestrians, bicyclists, transit, and motor vehicle operators and passengers.

The design of the street network and features should be consistent with the desired context and meet the criteria in this Manual. Context based street design incorporates the following elements:

- Streets are sized and detailed to equitably serve the needs of the intended road users.
- Building size and character spatially define streets and squares.
- Compact form reduces requirements for energy, infrastructure, and automobile use.
- Public transit is supported through a high level of connectivity and attractive facilities (stops, shelters, hubs).

Some development patterns, such as conventional suburban, do not promote the creation of a high quality, accessible street network. To promote the creation of context-sensitive high quality interconnected streets:

- Design for desired/target speeds.
- Design desirable geometry to achieve sufficient sight distance and appropriate cross section (not too wide or too narrow for the context).
- Provide sufficient right of way and space allocations for stormwater, utilities, pedestrian features, and lighting, etc.
- Provide reasonable control of access.

Two of the more recent alternatives to the conventional suburban development patterns include Traditional Neighborhood Development (TND) and Transit Oriented Development (TOD). For more information, refer to [21st Century Land Development Code](#).

Development controls are needed to aid in the establishment of safe streets and highways that will retain their efficiency and economic worth. Provisions for adequate alignment, right of way, setbacks, expansion, and access control are essential.

There may be legal, social, and economic challenges in land use controls. Proper coordination among the public, various governmental bodies, and public transit and highway agencies can provide solutions to many of these challenges. Implementation of responsible land use and development regulations along with intergovernmental respect for the goals and objectives of each, will promote a high-quality long term transportation network.

B OBJECTIVES

Provisions for vehicular and pedestrian safety are important objectives to be considered in land development. Other land development objectives, related to surface transportation, should include the promotion of smooth traffic flow, efficiency, economy, aesthetics, and environmental compatibility of the transportation network.

General objectives for land development that should be followed to promote good highway design include the following:

- Ensure the function of each street and highway meets its intended purpose and context
- Provide for logical and energy efficient interconnected street network and flow patterns
- Reduce trip lengths
- Encourage the appropriate vehicular speed
- Reduce traffic conflicts to a minimum and eliminate confusion
- Apply safe geometric design principles
- Promote bicycle and pedestrian use through connectivity and access
- Provide for future modifications and expansion
- Provide for aesthetic and environmental compatibility
- Develop economic design, construction, and maintenance strategies
- Provide for public transit facilities
- Provide accessibility for persons with disabilities

C PRINCIPLES AND GUIDELINES

There are many variables involved in land development; therefore, specific standards and requirements for land use and road network layouts cannot always be applied. Use of sound principles and guidelines can, however, aid in meeting the objectives of a better road network. Proper planning and design of the development layout are necessary to provide a satisfactory road network and to allow for the construction of safe roadways. The following principles and guidelines should be utilized in the design of the road network, in the control of access, and in the land use controls and space allocation that would affect vehicular and pedestrian use.

C.1 Development Types and Area Types

C.1.a Conventional Suburban Design

This development type was common practice through the 20th century. It is characterized by automobile-dominant design, segregated land uses, and roadways that are often designed primarily for the use of the automobile. The street patterns channel local traffic onto collector streets and roads to reach most destinations. Although destinations are oftentimes adjacent to one another, this conventional suburban design does not typically connect to them directly. This makes walking an inefficient form of transportation in this development type.

C.1.b Traditional Neighborhood Design (TND)

This development type is a development alternative that promotes a strong integration of land use and transportation. For further information on TND, refer to Chapter 19 of this Manual.

C.1.c Transit-Oriented Design (TOD)

This development type is defined as a compact, mixed use area within one half mile of a transit stop or station that is designed to maximize walking trips and access to transit. They also are characterized by streetscapes and an urban form oriented to pedestrians to promote walking trips to stations and varied other uses within station areas. Further information on TOD can be found on the Department's website: <http://www.fltod.com/>.

Transit-supportive planning and development rethinks land-use and development patterns so that communities may be effectively served by a balanced transportation system. Transit-supportive development enables citizens to use a variety of transportation modes for at least one or more of their daily trips between home, work, shopping, school, or services. These concepts are often called new urbanism to distinguish that form of urban design practice.

For more information on Conventional Suburban, TND and TOD, refer to the [21st Century Land Development Code](#) and [Traditional Neighborhood Development Handbook](#).

C.2 Network Design

The general layout of the road network establishes the traffic flow patterns and conflicts, thereby determining the basic safety and efficiency criteria. The design of the road network should be based on the following principles:

- The layout of street and highway systems should be logical and easily understood by the user.
- The design and layout of all streets and highways should clearly indicate their function.
- Local circulation patterns should be compatible with adjacent areas.
- Flow patterns should be designed to interconnect neighborhoods while discouraging through motorized traffic on local street networks.
- Elements in the local circulation should be adequate to avoid the need for extensive traffic controls.
- Typically, some streets are designed to accommodate a higher speed than the posted speed, which may cause enforcement problems and can have a negative safety impact on the circulation within an urban or residential network. In other situations, controlling speed levels is important in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, areas with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, and on-street parking. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features which are presented in **Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming**.
- The internal circulation should be sufficient to provide reasonable travel distance for local trips.

- The road network should be compatible with other transportation modes such as mass transit and pedestrian and bicycle facilities. Conflicts between different modes (particularly with pedestrian and bicycle traffic) should be kept to a minimum.
- The road network layout should be designed to reduce conflicts with pedestrians, eliminate substantial speed differentials and hazardous turning and crossing maneuvers.
- Generally the number of intersections should meet user needs, support development patterns, and traffic flow and connectivity requirements.
- Roundabouts should be evaluated for installation at new intersections. Consideration should be given to redesigning existing intersections as roundabouts. For further information on roundabouts, refer to the ***National Cooperative Highway Research Project (NCHRP) 672*** and ***674***.
- One-way streets are an option to consider where feasible.
- Streets should be designed to limit vehicle speeds (length, width, alignment, and intersections).
- The network should be designed to reduce the number of crossings and left turn maneuvers that are required.

C.3 Access Control

The standards and requirements presented in ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design***, are necessary to maintain safe and efficient streets and highways. Failure to provide adequate control of access has seriously damaged many existing roadways. Unrestricted access to major collectors and arterials has dramatically reduced their capacity and general economic value. The safety characteristics of these facilities have similarly been diminished by significantly increasing the number of vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle traffic conflicts.

The utilization of proper control over access is one of the most effective and economical means for maintaining the safety and utility of streets and highways. The procedures and controls used for land development significantly affect access control. The following principles should be utilized in the formation of land use controls for limiting access:

- The standards presented in **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design, C.8 Access Control**, should provide the basis for establishing land development criteria for control of access.
- The use of an arterial or major collector as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern on private property should be prohibited.
- The intersection of private roads and driveways with arterials or major collectors should be strictly controlled.
- Access to sites which generate major traffic (vehicular, pedestrian, and bicycle), should be located to provide the minimum conflict with other traffic. These generators include schools, shopping centers, business establishments, industrial areas, entertainment facilities, etc.
- Commercial strip development, with the associated proliferation of driveways, should be eliminated. Vehicular and pedestrian interconnections should be encouraged.
- The function of all streets and highways should be preserved by the application of the appropriate access controls.
- The spacing and location of access points should be predicated upon reducing the total traffic and pedestrian conflict.
- Hazardous maneuvers should be restricted by access controls. For example, crossing and left turn maneuvers may be controlled by continuous median separation. Pedestrian access should be allowed at appropriate intervals. Medians with waiting space for pedestrians crossing the street are often necessary.

C.4 Land Use Controls and Space Allocation

The provisions for adequate space and proper location of various activities is essential to promote safety and efficiency. The following guidelines should be utilized in land use:

- Adequate corridors and space should be considered for utilities. Utility locations should be carefully chosen to minimize interference with the operation of the streets, highways, and sidewalks.
- Adequate space for drainage facilities should be provided. Open drainage facilities should be located well clear of the traveled way.

- Design for pedestrian and bicycle facilities should comply with **Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities** and **Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities**.
- Adequate space should be provided for off-street and side-street parking. This is essential in commercial and industrial areas.
- Right of way and setback requirements should be adequate to provide ample sight distance at all intersections.
- Sufficient space should be allocated for the development of adequate intersections, including accessibility for disabled individuals.
- Space allocation for street lighting (existing or planned) should be incorporated into the initial plan. Supports for this lighting should be located outside of the required clear zone unless they are clearly of breakaway type, or are guarded by adequate protective devices. Lighting plans should provide for well-lit, safe waiting and walking areas and shall conform with the provisions of **Chapter 6 – Lighting**.
- Sufficient right of way should be provided for future widening, modification, or expansion of the highway network.
- Adequate corridors for future freeways, High Occupancy Vehicle (HOV) lanes, arterials, or major collectors should be provided.
- Adequate space for desired or required greenways should be provided.
- Adequate space for appropriate public transit facilities should be provided.

D COORDINATION

There are many demands that can conflict with the development of safe and efficient streets and highways. Meeting the demand for access can negatively impact the capacity of a roadway. Pressure to limit the amount of land dedicated for streets and highways inhibits the construction of an adequate road system. Coordination between highway agencies and other governmental bodies can assist in improving the procedures used in land development. Proper coordination should be solicited from legislative bodies, courts, planning and zoning departments, and transit and other governmental agencies to aid in developing a well-designed highway network. Coordination with transit planners, developers, engineers, architects, contractors, and other private individuals should be a continuous process.

The [Florida Metropolitan Planning Organization Advisory Council \(MPOAC\)](#) is a statewide transportation planning and policy organization created by the Florida Legislature pursuant to [Section 339.175\(11\), Florida Statutes](#), to augment the role of individual MPOs in the cooperative transportation planning process. The MPOAC assists MPOs in carrying out the urbanized area transportation planning process by serving as the principal forum for collective policy discussion. Further information on the MPOAC, including links to MPOs, can be found at <http://www.mpoac.org/>.

E CONTROL TECHNIQUES

The implementation of a sound highway transportation plan requires certain controls. A logical network design, adequate access controls, and proper land use controls are dependent upon and foster proper land development practices. Techniques that may be utilized to establish these necessary controls include the following:

E.1 Right of Way Acquisition

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is essential to allow for the construction of adequate streets and highways as specified in Chapter 3 – Geometric Design and Chapter 4 – Roadside Design. The provision of adequate space for clear roadside, sight distance, drainage facilities, buffer zones, intersections, transit, sidewalks, frontage roads, and future expansion is also necessary to develop and maintain safe streets and highways.

E.2 Regulatory Authority

The regulatory authority of state and local highway agencies (and other related agencies) should be sufficient to implement the necessary land use controls. The following general regulatory requirements and specific areas of control should be considered as minimum:

E.2.a General Regulatory Requirements

The necessary elements for achieving the following transportation goals should be incorporated into all land use and zoning ordinances:

- General highway transportation plans should be created and implemented.
- Determination and acquisition of transportation corridors for future expansions is essential.
- Development plans clearly showing all street and highway layouts, transit facilities, pedestrian and bicycle facilities, and utility corridors should be required. The execution of these plans should be enforceable.
- Development plans, building permits, and zoning should be reviewed by the appropriate agency.

- A safety check of proposed streets and highways should be a required step in the review and acceptance of all development plans.

E.2.b Specific Control

Specific areas of control necessary to develop adequate and efficient roadways include the following:

- Land use control and development regulations
- Control of access
- Driveway design
- Street and highway layouts
- Location of vehicular and pedestrian generators
- Location of transit, pedestrian, and bicycle facilities
- Right of way and setback requirements for sight distances and clear zone
- Provisions for drainage

E.3 Contracts and Agreements

Where land purchase or regulatory authority is not available or appropriate, the use of contractual arrangements or agreements with individuals can be beneficial. Negotiations with developers, builders, and private individuals should be used, where appropriate, to aid in the implementation of the necessary controls.

E.4 Education

Education of the public, developers, and governmental bodies can be beneficial in promoting proper land development controls. The need for future planning, access control, and design standards should be clearly and continuously emphasized. Successful solidification of the cooperation of the public and other governmental bodies depends upon clear presentation of the necessity for reasonable land development controls.

F REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

- 21st Century Land Development Code
<https://www.planning.org/publications/book/9026709/>
- Florida Transportation Plan
<http://floridatransportationplan.com/>
- Florida Growth Management and Comprehensive Planning Laws (DOE)
<http://www.floridajobs.org/community-planning-and-development>
- 1000 Friends of Florida
<http://www.1000fof.org/>
- Florida Metropolitan Planning Organization Advisory Council (MPOAC)
<http://www.mpoac.org/>
- Understanding Sprawl, A Citizen's Guide
<http://www.davidsuzuki.org/publications/resources/2003/understanding-sprawl-a-citizens-guide/>
- Traditional Neighborhood Development Handbook
<http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FloridaGreenbook/TND-Handbook.pdf>

CHAPTER 3 GEOMETRIC DESIGN

| | | |
|---------|---|------|
| A | INTRODUCTION | 3-1 |
| B | OBJECTIVES | 3-4 |
| C | DESIGN ELEMENTS | 3-5 |
| C.1 | Design Speed | 3-5 |
| C.2 | Design Vehicles | 3-7 |
| C.3 | Sight Distance | 3-11 |
| C.3.a | Stopping Sight Distance | 3-11 |
| C.3.b | Decision Sight Distance | 3-14 |
| C.3.c | Passing Sight Distance | 3-16 |
| C.3.d | Intersection Sight Distance | 3-17 |
| C.4 | Horizontal Alignment | 3-17 |
| C.4.a | General Criteria | 3-17 |
| C.4.b | Maximum Deflections in Alignment without Curves | 3-18 |
| C.4.c | Superelevation | 3-22 |
| C.4.c.1 | Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways | 3-22 |
| C.4.c.2 | Low Speed Urban Roadways | 3-23 |
| C.4.d | Maximum Curvature/Minimum Radius | 3-27 |
| C.4.e | Superelevation Transition (superelevation runoffs plus tangent runoff) | 3-28 |
| C.4.f | Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves | 3-30 |
| C.4.g | Lane Widening on Curves | 3-34 |
| C.5 | Vertical Alignment | 3-37 |
| C.5.a | General Criteria | 3-37 |
| C.5.b | Grades | 3-37 |
| C.5.c | Vertical Curves | 3-40 |
| C.6 | Alignment Coordination | 3-45 |
| C.7 | Cross Section Elements | 3-46 |
| C.7.a | Number of Lanes | 3-46 |
| C.7.b | Pavement | 3-46 |
| C.7.b.1 | Pavement Width | 3-46 |

| | | | |
|-------|---------|--|------|
| | C.7.b.2 | Traveled Way Cross Slope (not in superelevation)..... | 3-48 |
| C.7.c | | Shoulders..... | 3-49 |
| | C.7.c.1 | Shoulder Width..... | 3-50 |
| | C.7.c.2 | Shoulder Cross Slope | 3-51 |
| C.7.d | | Sidewalks..... | 3-51 |
| C.7.e | | Medians | 3-53 |
| | C.7.e.1 | Type of Median..... | 3-54 |
| | C.7.e.2 | Median Width | 3-54 |
| | C.7.e.3 | Median Slopes..... | 3-56 |
| | C.7.e.4 | Median Barriers | 3-56 |
| C.7.f | | Islands | 3-56 |
| | C.7.f.1 | Channelizing Islands | 3-60 |
| | C.7.f.2 | Divisional Islands..... | 3-64 |
| | C.7.f.3 | Refuge Islands | 3-65 |
| C.7.g | | Curbs | 3-70 |
| C.7.h | | Parking..... | 3-71 |
| C.7.i | | Right of Way | 3-71 |
| C.7.j | | Changes in Typical Section..... | 3-72 |
| | C.7.j.1 | General Criteria | 3-72 |
| | C.7.j.2 | Lane Deletions and Additions..... | 3-73 |
| | C.7.j.3 | Preferential Lanes | 3-73 |
| | C.7.j.4 | Structures | 3-73 |
| | | C.7.j.4.(a) Lateral Offset..... | 3-74 |
| | | C.7.j.4.(b) Vertical Clearance | 3-74 |
| | | C.7.j.4.(c) End Treatment..... | 3-75 |
| C.8 | | Access Control..... | 3-75 |
| | C.8.a | Justification | 3-75 |
| | C.8.b | General Criteria..... | 3-75 |
| | | C.8.b.1 Location of Access Points | 3-75 |
| | | C.8.b.2 Spacing of Access Points..... | 3-76 |
| | | C.8.b.3 Restrictions of Maneuvers | 3-76 |
| | | C.8.b.4 Auxiliary Lanes..... | 3-77 |
| | | C.8.b.5 Grade Separation | 3-77 |
| | | C.8.b.6 Roundabouts | 3-77 |

| | | | |
|-----|-------------|--|-------|
| | C.8.c | Control for All Limited Access Highways..... | 3-78 |
| | C.8.d | Control of Urban and Rural Streets and Highways | 3-79 |
| | C.8.e | Land Development..... | 3-80 |
| C.9 | | Intersection Design | 3-81 |
| | C.9.a | General Criteria..... | 3-81 |
| | C.9.b | Sight Distance..... | 3-82 |
| | C.9.b.1 | General Criteria | 3-82 |
| | C.9.b.2 | Obstructions to Sight Distance | 3-84 |
| | C.9.b.3 | Stopping Sight Distance | 3-85 |
| | C.9.b.3.(a) | Approach to Stops..... | 3-85 |
| | C.9.b.3.(b) | On Turning Roads..... | 3-86 |
| | C.9.b.4 | Sight Distance for Intersection Maneuvers | 3-88 |
| | C.9.b.4.(a) | Driver's Eye Position and Vehicle Stopping Position | 3-92 |
| | C.9.b.4.(b) | Design Vehicle | 3-92 |
| | C.9.b.4.(c) | Case B1 - Left Turns from the Minor Road | 3-93 |
| | C.9.b.4.(d) | Case B2 - Right Turns From the Minor Road and Case B3 – Crossing Maneuver From the Minor Road | 3-93 |
| | C.9.b.4.(e) | Intersections with Traffic Signal Control (AASHTO Case D) | 3-94 |
| | C.9.b.4.(f) | Intersections with All-Way Stop Control (AASHTO Case E)..... | 3-95 |
| | C.9.b.4.(g) | Left Turns from the Major Road (AASHTO Case F) | 3-95 |
| | C.9.b.4.(h) | Intersection Sight Distance References..... | 3-95 |
| | C.9.c | Auxiliary Lanes..... | 3-97 |
| | C.9.c.1 | Merging Maneuvers..... | 3-97 |
| | C.9.c.2 | Acceleration Lanes..... | 3-99 |
| | C.9.c.3 | Exit Lanes | 3-103 |
| | C.9.c.4 | Auxiliary Lanes at Intersections..... | 3-106 |
| | C.9.c.4.(a) | Widths of Auxiliary Lanes | 3-106 |
| | C.9.c.4.(b) | Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration..... | 3-106 |
| | C.9.c.4.(c) | Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for | |

| | | |
|-------|---|-------|
| | Acceleration | 3-110 |
| C.9.d | Turning Roadways at Intersections | 3-111 |
| | C.9.d.1 Design Speed | 3-111 |
| | C.9.d.2 Horizontal Alignment | 3-111 |
| | C.9.d.3 Vertical Alignment | 3-113 |
| | C.9.d.4 Cross Section Elements | 3-113 |
| C.9.e | At Grade Intersections | 3-116 |
| | C.9.e.1 Turning Radii | 3-116 |
| | C.9.e.2 Cross Section Correlation | 3-117 |
| | C.9.e.3 Median Openings | 3-117 |
| | C.9.e.4 Channelization..... | 3-117 |
| C.9.f | Driveways | 3-118 |
| C.9.g | Interchanges | 3-118 |
| C.9.h | Clear Zone | 3-120 |
| C.10 | Other Design Factors..... | 3-120 |
| | C.10.a Pedestrian Facilities..... | 3-120 |
| | C.10.a.1 Policy and Objectives - New Facilities | 3-121 |
| | C.10.a.2 Accessibility Requirements | 3-121 |
| | C.10.a.3 Sidewalks | 3-121 |
| | C.10.a.4 Curb Ramps | 3-122 |
| | C.10.a.5 Additional Considerations..... | 3-123 |
| | C.10.b Bicycle Facilities..... | 3-123 |
| | C.10.c Bridge Design Loadings..... | 3-123 |
| | C.10.d Dead End Streets and Cul-de-Sacs | 3-124 |
| | C.10.e Bus Benches and Transit Shelters..... | 3-124 |
| | C.10.f Traffic Calming..... | 3-124 |
| C.11 | Reconstruction | 3-125 |
| | C.11.a Introduction | 3-125 |
| | C.11.b Evaluation of Streets and Highways | 3-125 |
| | C.11.c Priorities | 3-125 |
| C.12 | Design Exceptions | 3-127 |
| C.13 | Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT \leq 400) | 3-128 |
| | C.13.a Bridge Width | 3-128 |
| | C.13.b Roadside Design..... | 3-128 |

TABLES

| | | |
|---------------|---|------|
| Table 3 – 1 | Minimum and Maximum Design Speed (mph)..... | 3-6 |
| Table 3 – 2 | Design Vehicles..... | 3-8 |
| Table 3 – 3 | Minimum Turning Radii of Design Vehicles | 3-10 |
| Table 3 – 4 | Minimum Stopping Sight Distance..... | 3-13 |
| Table 3 – 5 | Decision Sight Distance..... | 3-15 |
| Table 3 – 6 | Minimum Passing Sight Distance | 3-17 |
| Table 3 – 7 | Maximum Deflection Angle Through Intersection | 3-19 |
| Table 3 – 8 | Minimum Lengths of Horizontal Curves..... | 3-21 |
| Table 3 – 9 | Length of Compound Curves on Turning Roadways | 3-22 |
| Table 3 – 10 | Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways ($e_{max} = 0.10$)..... | 3-24 |
| Table 3 – 11 | Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors ($e_{max} = 0.05$) | 3-25 |
| Table 3 – 12 | Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates Low Speed Local Roads ($e_{max} = 0.05$)..... | 3-26 |
| Table 3 – 13 | Superelevation Transition Slope Rates..... | 3-29 |
| Table 3 – 14 | Horizontal Curvature..... | 3-33 |
| Table 3 – 15A | Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way) | 3-35 |
| Table 3 – 15B | Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way) | 3-36 |
| Table 3 – 16 | Maximum Grades (in Percent)..... | 3-38 |
| Table 3 – 17 | Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve | 3-40 |

| | | |
|--------------|---|-------|
| Table 3 – 18 | Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves (Stopping Sight Distance) | 3-41 |
| Table 3 - 19 | Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves (Passing Sight Distance) .. | 3-43 |
| Table 3 – 20 | Minimum Lane Widths | 3-47 |
| Table 3 – 21 | Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Highways | 3-50 |
| Table 3 – 22 | Shoulder Cross Slope..... | 3-51 |
| Table 3 – 23 | Minimum Median Width | 3-55 |
| Table 3 – 24 | Access Control for All Limited Access Highways..... | 3-79 |
| Table 3 – 25 | Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values) | 3-86 |
| Table 3 – 26 | Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes..... | 3-97 |
| Table 3 – 27 | Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less | 3-100 |
| Table 3 – 28 | Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level..... | 3-101 |
| Table 3 – 29 | Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals..... | 3-102 |
| Table 3 – 30 | Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals..... | 3-104 |
| Table 3 – 31 | Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians..... | 3-110 |
| Table 3 – 32 | Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections..... | 3-112 |
| Table 3 – 33 | Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections..... | 3-112 |
| Table 3 – 34 | Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals..... | 3-112 |

FIGURES

| | | |
|---------------|---|------|
| Figure 3 – 1A | Horizontal Sight Line Offset Distances for Stopping Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves | 3-31 |
| Figure 3 – 1B | Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance | 3-32 |
| Figure 3 – 2 | Critical Length Versus Upgrade | 3-39 |
| Figure 3 – 3 | Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance) | 3-42 |
| Figure 3 – 4 | Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Open Road Conditions) | 3-44 |
| Figure 3 – 5 | General Types and Shapes of Islands and Medians | 3-57 |
| Figure 3 – 6 | Channelization Island for Pedestrian Crossings (Curbed) | 3-61 |
| Figure 3 – 7 | Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Curbed) | 3-62 |
| Figure 3 – 8 | Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Flush Shoulder) | 3-63 |
| Figure 3 – 9 | Alignment for Divisional Islands at Intersections | 3-65 |
| Figure 3 – 10 | Pedestrian Refuge Island | 3-66 |
| Figure 3 – 11 | Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Yield Condition) | 3-67 |
| Figure 3 – 12 | Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Stop Condition) | 3-67 |
| Figure 3 – 13 | Pedestrian Crossing in Refuge Island | 3-69 |
| Figure 3 – 14 | Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs | 3-70 |
| Figure 3 – 15 | Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades | 3-87 |
| Figure 3 – 16 | Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right) | 3-90 |
| Figure 3 – 17 | Intersection Sight Distance | 3-91 |
| Figure 3 – 18 | Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road | 3-96 |
| Figure 3 – 19 | Termination of Merging Lanes | 3-98 |

Figure 3 – 20 Entrance for Deceleration Lane 3-105

Figure 3 – 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes) 3-109

CHAPTER 3

GEOMETRIC DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

Geometric design is defined as the design or proportioning of the visible elements of the street or highway. The geometry of the street or highway is of central importance since it provides the framework for the design of other highway elements. In addition, the geometric design establishes the basic nature and quality of the vehicle path, which has a primary effect upon the overall safety characteristics of the street or highway.

The design of roadway geometry must be conducted in close coordination with other design elements of the street or highway. These other elements include pavement design, roadway lighting, traffic control devices, transit, drainage, and structural design. The design should consider safe roadside clear zones, pedestrian safety, emergency response, and maintenance capabilities.

The safety characteristics of the design should be given primary consideration. The initial establishment of sufficient right of way and adequate horizontal and vertical alignment is not only essential from a safety standpoint, but also necessary to allow future upgrading and expansion without exorbitant expenditure of highway funds.

The design elements selected should be reasonably uniform but should not be inflexible.

The minimum standards presented in this chapter should not automatically become the standards for geometric design. The designer should consider use of a higher level, when practical, and consider cost-benefits as well as consistency with adjacent facilities. Reconstruction and maintenance of facilities should, where practical, include upgrading to these minimum standards.

In restricted or unusual conditions, it may not be possible to meet the minimum standards. In such cases, the designer shall obtain an exception in accordance with **Chapter 14 – Design Exceptions** from the reviewing or permitting organization. However, every effort should be made to obtain the best possible alignment, grade, sight distance, and proper drainage consistent with the terrain, the development, safety, and fund availability. The concept of road users has expanded in recent years creating additional considerations for the designer.

In making decisions on the standards to be applied to a particular project, the designer must also address the needs of pedestrians, bicyclists, elder road and transit users, people with disabilities, freight movement and other users and uses. This is true for both urban and rural facilities.

The design features of urban local streets are governed by practical limitations to a greater extent than those of similar roads in rural areas. The two dominant design controls are: (1) the type and extent of urban development and its limitations on rights of way and (2) zoning or regulatory restrictions. Some streets primarily are land service streets in residential areas. In such cases, the overriding consideration is to foster a safe and pleasing environment. Other streets are land service only in part, and features of traffic and public transit service may be predominant.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular street or highway requires considerable study and thought. When specific criteria are not provided in this Manual and reference is made to guidelines and design details given by current American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) publications, these guidelines and standards should generally be considered as minimum criteria. For the design of recreational roads, local service roads, and alleys, see *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)*, also known as the *AASHTO Greenbook (2011)* and other publications.

Right of way and pavement width requirements for new construction may be reduced for the paving of certain existing unpaved streets and very low volume rural roads provided all the conditions listed below are satisfied:

- The road is functionally classified as a local road.
- The 20-year projected ADT is less than or equal to 400 vehicles per day and the design year projected peak hourly volume is 100 vehicles per hour or less. Note: The design year may be any time within a range of the present to 20 years in the future, depending on the nature of the improvement.
- The road has no foreseeable probability of changing to a higher functional classification through changes in land use, extensions to serve new developing land areas, or any other use which would generate daily or hourly traffic volumes greater than those listed above.
- There is no reasonable possibility of acquiring additional right of way without:
- Incurring expenditures of public funds in an amount which would be excessive compared to the public benefits achieved

- Causing substantial damage or disruption to abutting property improvements to a degree that is unacceptable considering the local environment

B OBJECTIVES

The major objective in geometric design is to establish a vehicle path and environment providing a reasonable margin of safety for the motorist, transit, bicyclist, and pedestrian under the expected operating conditions and speed. It is recognized that Florida's design driver is aging, and tourism is our major industry. This gives even more emphasis on simplicity and easily understood geometry. The design of street or highway features should consider the following:

- Provide the most simple geometry attainable, consistent with the physical constraints
- Provide a design that has a reasonable and consistent margin of safety at the expected operating speed
- Provide a design that is safe at night and under adverse weather conditions
- Provide a facility that is adequate for the expected traffic conditions and transit needs
- Allow for reasonable deficiencies in the driver, such as:
 - Periodic inattention
 - Reduced skill and judgment
 - Slow reaction and response
- Provide an environment that minimizes hazards, is as hazard free as practical, and is "forgiving" to a vehicle that has deviated from the travel path or is out of control.

C DESIGN ELEMENTS

C.1 Design Speed

Design speed is a selected speed used to determine the various geometric design features of the street or highway. Selection of an appropriate design speed must consider the anticipated operating speed, topography, existing and future adjacent land use, and functional classification. Consideration must also be given to pedestrian and bicycle usage.

Many critical design features such as sight distance and curvature are directly related to, and vary appreciably with, design speed. For this reason, the selected design speed should be consistent with the speeds that drivers are likely to expect on a given street or highway facility. The design speed shall not be less than the expected posted or legal speed limit. Once the design speed is selected, all pertinent highway features should be related to it to obtain a balanced design.

Above minimum design criteria for specific design elements such as flatter curves and longer sight distances should be used where practical, particularly on high speed facilities. On lower speed facilities, use of above minimum values may encourage travel at speeds higher than the design speed.

The design speed utilized should be consistent over a given section of street or highway. Required changes in design speed should be effected in a gradual fashion. When isolated reductions in design speed cannot reasonably be avoided, appropriate speed signs should be posted.

Minimum and maximum values for design speed are given in Table 3 – 1 Minimum and Maximum Design Speed.

High speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 50 mph and greater. Low speed facilities are defined as those facilities with design speeds 45 mph and less. The posted speed shall be less than or equal to the design speed.

The *AASHTO Greenbook (2011)* provides additional information on design speed.

Table 3 – 1 Minimum and Maximum Design Speed (mph)

| Facility ¹ | | AADT (vpd) | Terrain | Design Speed (mph) |
|-----------------------|-------|------------|-------------------|--|
| Freeways | Rural | All | Level and Rolling | 70 |
| | Urban | All | Level and Rolling | 50 – 70 ² |
| Arterials | Rural | All | Level | 60 – 70 |
| | | | Rolling | 50 – 70 |
| | Urban | All | All | 30 – 60 ³ |
| Collectors | Rural | ≥ 400 | Level | 60 – 65 (50 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000) |
| | | | Rolling | 50 – 65 (40 mph min for AADT 400 to 2000) |
| | < 400 | Level | 40 – 60 | |
| | | Rolling | 30 – 60 | |
| | Urban | All | All | 30 – 50 ³ |
| Local | Rural | ≥ 400 | Level | 50 – 60 |
| | | | Rolling | 40 – 60 |
| | < 400 | Level | 30 – 50 | |
| | | Rolling | 20 – 40 | |
| | Urban | All | All | 20 – 30 ⁴ |

Footnotes:

1. Urban design speeds are applicable to streets and highways located within designated urban boundaries as well as those streets and highways outside designated urban boundaries yet within small communities or urban like developed areas. Rural design speeds are applicable to all other rural areas.
2. A design speed of 70 mph should be used for urban freeways when practical. Lower design speeds should only be used in highly developed areas with closely spaced interchanges. For these areas a minimum design speed of 60 mph is recommended unless it can be shown lower speeds will be consistent with driver expectancy.
3. Lower speeds apply to central business districts and in more developed areas while higher speeds are more applicable to outlying and developing areas.
4. Since the function of urban local streets is to provide access to adjacent property, all design elements should be consistent with the character of activity on and adjacent to the street, and should encourage speeds generally not exceeding 30 mph.

C.2 Design Vehicles

A "design vehicle" is a vehicle with representative weight, dimensions, and operating characteristics, used to establish street and highway design controls for accommodating vehicles of designated classes. For the purpose of geometric design, the design vehicle should be one with dimensions and minimum turning radii larger than those of almost all vehicles in its class. Design vehicles are listed in Table 3 – 2 Design Vehicles. One or more of these vehicles should be used as a control in the selection of geometric design elements. In certain industrial (or other) areas, special service vehicles may have to be considered in the design. Fire equipment and emergency vehicles should have reasonable access to all areas. Additional information on the maximum width, height and length of vehicles in Florida can be found in [Section 316.515, F.S. Motor Vehicles; Maximum width, height, length.](#)

If a significant number or percentage (5 percent of all the total traffic) of vehicles of those classes larger than passenger vehicles are likely to use a particular street or highway, that class should be used as a design control. The design of arterial streets and highways should normally be adequate to accommodate all design vehicles. The decision as to which of the design vehicles (or other special vehicles) should be used as a control is complex and requires careful study. Each situation must be evaluated individually to arrive at a reasonable estimate of the type and volume of expected traffic.

- Design criteria significantly affected by the type of vehicle include:
- Horizontal and vertical clearances
- Alignment
- Lane widening on curves
- Shoulder width requirements
- Turning roadway and intersection radii
- Intersection sight distance
- Acceleration criteria

Particular care should be taken in establishing the radii at intersections, so vehicles may enter the street or highway without encroaching on adjacent travel lanes or leaving the pavement. It is acceptable for occasional trucks or buses to make use of both receiving lanes, especially on side streets.

Table 3 – 2 Design Vehicles

| Design Vehicle | | Dimensions (feet) | | | | | |
|---|----------|---------------------|----------|------|----------------|---------------|---------|
| Type | Symbol | Wheelbase | Overhang | | Overall Length | Overall Width | Height |
| | | | Front | Rear | | | |
| Passenger Car | P | 11 | 3 | 5 | 19 | 7 | 4.3 |
| Single Unit Truck | SU-30 | 20 | 4 | 6 | 30 | 8 | 11-13.5 |
| Single Unit Truck – 3 Axle | SU-40 | 25 | 4 | 10.5 | 39.5 | 8 | 11-13.5 |
| City Transit Bus | CITY-BUS | 25 | 7 | 8 | 40 | 8.5 | 10.5 |
| Conventional School Bus (65 passenger) | S-BUS 36 | 21.3 | 2.5 | 12.0 | 35.8 | 8.0 | 10.5 |
| Articulated Bus | A-BUS | 22+19.4=41.4 | 8.6 | 10 | 60 | 8.5 | 11 |
| Motor Home | MH | 20 | 4 | 6 | 30 | 8 | 12 |
| Car & Camper Trailer | P/T | 11+5+17.7=33.7** | 3 | 12 | 48.7 | 8 | 10 |
| Car & Boat Trailer | P/B | 11+5+15=31** | 3 | 8 | 42 | 8 | --- |
| Intermediate Semitrailer | WB-40 | 12.5+25.5=38 | 3 | 4.5 | 45.5 | 8 | 13.5 |
| Intermediate Semitrailer | WB-50 | 14.6+35.4=50 | 3 | 2 | 55 | 8.5 | 13.5 |
| Interstate Semitrailer*** | WB-62 | 19.5+41=60.5 | 4 | 4.5 | 69 | 8.5 | 13.5 |
| Florida Interstate Semitrailer*** | WB-62FL | 19.5+41=60.5 | 4 | 9 | 73.5 | 8.5 | 13.5 |
| Interstate Semitrailer*** | WB-67 | 21.6+45.4=67 | 4 | 2.5 | 73.5 | 8.5 | 13.5 |
| "Double-Bottom"-Semitrailer/Trailer Combination | WB-67D | 11+23+10*+22.5=66.5 | 2.3 | 3.0 | 72.3 | 8.5 | 13.5 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Table 2-1b.

* Distance between rear wheels of front trailer and front wheels of rear trailer

** Distance between rear wheels of trailer and front wheels of car

*** The term "Interstate" does not imply the vehicle is restricted to interstate and limited access highways only.

The minimum turning radii of design vehicles is presented in Table 3 – 3 Minimum Turning Radii of Design Vehicles. The principal dimensions affecting design are the minimum centerline turning radius, the out-to-out track width, the wheelbase, and the path of the inner rear tire. The speed of the turning vehicle is assumed to be less than 10 mph.

The boundaries of the turning path of each design vehicle for its sharpest turns are established by the outer trace of the front overhang and path of the inner rear wheel. This sharpest turn assumes that the outer front wheel follows the circular arc defining the minimum centerline turning radius as determined by the vehicle steering mechanism.

Figures illustrating the minimum turning radii for a variety of vehicles along with additional information can be found in the *AASHTO Greenbook (2011), Chapter 2 – Design Controls and Geometrics*.

Table 3 – 3 Minimum Turning Radii of Design Vehicles

| Design Vehicle Type | Symbol | Dimensions In Feet | | |
|--|----------|-------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| | | Minimum Design Turning Radius | Centerline Turning* Radius | Minimum Inside Radius |
| Passenger Car | P | 23.8 | 21.0 | 14.4 |
| Single Unit Truck | SU-30 | 41.8 | 38.0 | 28.4 |
| Single Unit Truck – 3 Axle | SU-40 | 51.2 | 47.4 | 36.4 |
| City Transit Bus | CITY-BUS | 41.6 | 37.8 | 24.5 |
| Conventional School Bus (65 passenger) | S-BUS 36 | 38.6 | 34.9 | 23.8 |
| Articulated Bus | A-BUS | 39.4 | 35.5 | 21.3 |
| Motor Home | MH | 39.7 | 36.0 | 26.0 |
| Car & Camper Trailer | P/T | 32.9 | 30.0 | 18.3 |
| Car & Boat Trailer | P/B | 23.8 | 21.0 | 8.0 |
| Intermediate Semitrailer | WB-40 | 39.9 | 36.0 | 19.3 |
| Intermediate Semitrailer | WB-50 | 45 | 41 | 17.0 |
| Interstate Semitrailer | WB-62 | 44.8 | 41.0 | 7.4 |
| Florida Interstate Semitrailer*** | WB-62FL | 44.8 | 41.0 | 7.4 |
| "Double-Bottom"- Semitrailer/Trailer Combination | WB-67D | 44.8 | 40.9 | 19.1 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Design Controls and Criteria, Table 2-2b.

* The turning radius assumed by a designer when investigating possible turning paths and is set at the centerline of the front axle of a vehicle. If the minimum turning path is assumed, the CTR approximately equals the minimum design turning radius minus one-half the front width of the vehicle.

C.3 Sight Distance

The provision for adequate horizontal and vertical sight distance is an essential factor in the development of a safe street or highway. An unobstructed view of the upcoming roadway is necessary to allow time and space for the safe execution of passing, stopping, intersection movements, and other normal and emergency maneuvers. It is also important to provide as great a sight distance as possible to allow the driver time to plan for future actions. The driver is continuously required to execute normal slowing, turning, and acceleration maneuvers. If he can plan in advance for these actions, traffic flow will be smoother and less hazardous. Unexpected emergency maneuvers will also be less hazardous if they are not combined with uncertainty regarding the required normal maneuvers. The appropriate use of lighting (**Chapter 6 – Lighting**) may be required to provide adequate sight distances for night driving.

Future obstruction to sight distance that may develop (e.g., vegetation) or be constructed should be taken into consideration in the initial design. Areas outside of the road right of way that are not under the highway agency's jurisdiction should be considered as points of obstruction. Planned future construction of median barriers, guardrails, grade separations, or other structures should also be considered as possible sight obstructions.

C.3.a Stopping Sight Distance

Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided continuously on all streets and highways. The factors, which determine the minimum distance required to stop, include:

- Vehicle speed
- Driver's total reaction time
- Characteristics and conditions of the vehicle
- Friction capabilities between the tires and the roadway surface
- Vertical and horizontal alignment of the roadway

It is desirable that the driver be given sufficient sight distance to avoid an object or slow-moving vehicle with a natural, smooth maneuver rather than an extreme or panic reaction.

The determination of available stopping sight distance shall be based on a height of the driver's eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of obstruction to be avoided equal to 2.0 feet. It would, of course, be desirable to use a height of obstruction equal to zero (coincident with the roadway surface) to provide the driver with a more positive sight condition. Where horizontal sight distance may be obstructed on curves, the driver's eye and the obstruction shall be assumed to be located at the centerline of the traffic lane on the inside of the curve.

The stopping sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance for level and rolling roadways.

Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance

| Design Speed (mph) | Stopping Sight Distance (feet) | | | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|------------|-----|-----|----------|-----|-----|
| | Level (≤ 2%) | | | | | | |
| | | Downgrades | | | Upgrades | | |
| | | 3% | 6% | 9% | 3% | 6% | 9% |
| 20 | 115 | 116 | 120 | 126 | 109 | 107 | 104 |
| 25 | 155 | 158 | 165 | 173 | 147 | 143 | 140 |
| 30 | 200 | 205 | 215 | 227 | 200 | 184 | 179 |
| 35 | 250 | 257 | 271 | 287 | 237 | 229 | 222 |
| 40 | 305 | 315 | 333 | 354 | 289 | 278 | 269 |
| 45 | 360 | 378 | 400 | 427 | 344 | 331 | 320 |
| 50 | 425 | 446 | 474 | 507 | 405 | 388 | 375 |
| 55 | 495 | 520 | 553 | 593 | 469 | 450 | 433 |
| 60 | 570 | 598 | 638 | 686 | 538 | 515 | 495 |
| 65 | 645 | 682 | 728 | 785 | 612 | 584 | 561 |
| 70 | 730 | 771 | 825 | 891 | 690 | 658 | 631 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-1 Stopping Sight Distance on Level Roadways and Table 3-2 Stopping Sight Distance on Grades.

C.3.b Decision Sight Distance

Decision sight distance is the distance needed for a driver to detect an unexpected or otherwise difficult to perceive information source or condition in a roadway environment that may be visually cluttered. It allows the driver to recognize the condition or its potential threat, select an appropriate speed and path, and initiate and complete complex maneuvers. Minimum stopping distance does not provide sufficient space or time for the driver to make decisions regarding complex situations requiring more than simple perception-reaction process

Examples of critical locations where additional sight distance is needed include interchange and intersection locations, where unusual or unexpected maneuvers are needed, changes in typical sections such as toll plazas or lane drops, and areas of concentrated demand where there is visual noise from competing sources of information, such as roadway elements, traffic, traffic control devices and advertising signs.

The decision sight distances in Table 3 – 5 Decision Sight Distance may be used (1) to provide values for sight distances that may be appropriate at critical locations, and (2) to serve as criteria for evaluating the suitability of the available sight distances at these locations. If it is not practical to provide decision sight distance because of horizontal or vertical curvature or if relocation of decision points is not practical, special attention should be given to using appropriate traffic control devices providing advance warning of the conditions that are likely to be encountered.

Table 3 – 5 Decision Sight Distance

| Design Speed (mph) | Decision Sight Distance (feet) | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|------|------|------|------|
| | Level Avoidance Maneuver | | | | |
| | A | B | C | D | E |
| 20 | 130 | 305 | 300 | 355 | 410 |
| 25 | 170 | 395 | 375 | 445 | 515 |
| 30 | 220 | 490 | 450 | 535 | 620 |
| 35 | 275 | 590 | 525 | 625 | 720 |
| 40 | 330 | 690 | 600 | 715 | 825 |
| 45 | 395 | 800 | 675 | 800 | 930 |
| 50 | 465 | 910 | 750 | 890 | 1030 |
| 55 | 535 | 1030 | 865 | 980 | 1135 |
| 60 | 610 | 1150 | 990 | 1125 | 1280 |
| 65 | 695 | 1275 | 1050 | 1220 | 1365 |
| 70 | 780 | 1410 | 1105 | 1275 | 1445 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 - 3 Decision Sight Distance

Notes: 1. Avoidance Maneuver A: Stop on rural road – t = 3.0 s
 2. Avoidance Maneuver B: Stop on urban road – t = 9.1 s
 3. Avoidance Maneuver C: Speed/path/direction change on rural road – t varies between 10.2 and 11.2 s
 4. Avoidance Maneuver D: Speed/path/direction change on suburban road – t varies between 12.1 and 12.9 s
 5. Avoidance Maneuver E: Speed/path/direction change on urban road – t varies between 14.0 and 14.5 s

The sight distance on a freeway preceding the approach nose of an exit ramp should exceed the minimum by 25 percent or more. A minimum sight distance of 1000 feet, measured from the driver's eye to the road surface is a desirable goal. There should be a clear view of the exit terminal including the exit nose.

C.3.c Passing Sight Distance

The passing maneuver, which requires occupation of the opposing travel lane, is inherently dangerous. The driver is required to make simultaneous estimates of time, distance, relative speeds, and vehicle capabilities. Errors in these estimates result in frequent and serious crashes.

Streets or highways with two or more travel lanes in a given direction are not subject to requirements for safe passing sight distance. Two-lane, two-way highways should be provided with safe passing sight distance for as much of the highway as feasible. The driver demand for passing opportunity is high and serious limitations on the opportunity for passing reduces the capacity and safe characteristics of the highway.

The distance traveled after the driver's final decision to pass (while encroaching into the opposite travel path) is that which is required to pass and return to the original travel lane in front of the overtaken vehicle. In addition to this distance, the safe passing sight distance must include the distance traveled by an opposing vehicle during this time period, as well as a reasonable margin of safety. Due to the many variables in vehicle characteristics and driver behavior, the passing sight distance should be as long as is practicable.

The determination of passing sight distance shall be based on a height of eye equal to 3.50 feet and a height of object passing equal to 3.50 feet. Where passing is permitted, the passing sight distance shall be no less than the values given in Table 3 – 6 Minimum Passing Sight Distances.

Table 3 – 6 Minimum Passing Sight Distance

| (For application of passing sight distance, use an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.50 feet above the road surface) | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|
| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| Minimum Passing Sight Distance (feet) | 400 | 450 | 500 | 550 | 600 | 700 | 800 | 900 | 1000 | 1100 | 1200 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-4 Passing Sight Distance for Design of Two-Lane Highways.

C.3.d Intersection Sight Distance

Sight distances for intersection movements are given in the general intersection requirements (C.9 Intersection Design, this chapter).

C.4 Horizontal Alignment

C.4.a General Criteria

The standard of alignment selected for a particular section of street or highway should extend throughout the section with no sudden changes from easy to sharp curvature. Where sharper curvature is unavoidable, a sequence of curves of increasing degree should be utilized.

Winding alignment consisting of sharp curves is hazardous, reduces capacity, and should be avoided. The use of as flat a curve as possible is recommended. Flatter curves are not only less hazardous, but also frequently less costly due to the shortened roadway.

Maximum curvature should not be used in the following locations:

- High fills or elevated structures. The lack of surrounding objects reduces the driver's perception of the roadway alignment.
- At or near a crest in grade.
- At or near a low point in a sag or grade.
- At the end of long tangents.

- At or near intersections, transit stops, or points of ingress or egress.
- At or near other decision points.

The "broken back" arrangement of curves (short tangent between two curves in the same direction) should be avoided. This is acceptable only at design speeds of 30 mph or less. This arrangement produces unexpected and hazardous situations.

When reversals in alignment are used and superelevation is required, a sufficient length of tangent between the reverse curves is required for adequate superelevation transition.

Compound curves should be avoided, especially when curves are sharp. They tend to produce erratic and dangerous vehicle operations. When compound curves are necessary, the radius of the flatter curve should not be more than 50 percent greater than the sharper curve.

The transition between tangents and curves should normally be accomplished by the use of appropriate straight-line transitions or spirals. This is essential to assist the driver in maintaining his vehicle in the proper travel path.

C.4.b Maximum Deflections in Alignment without Curves

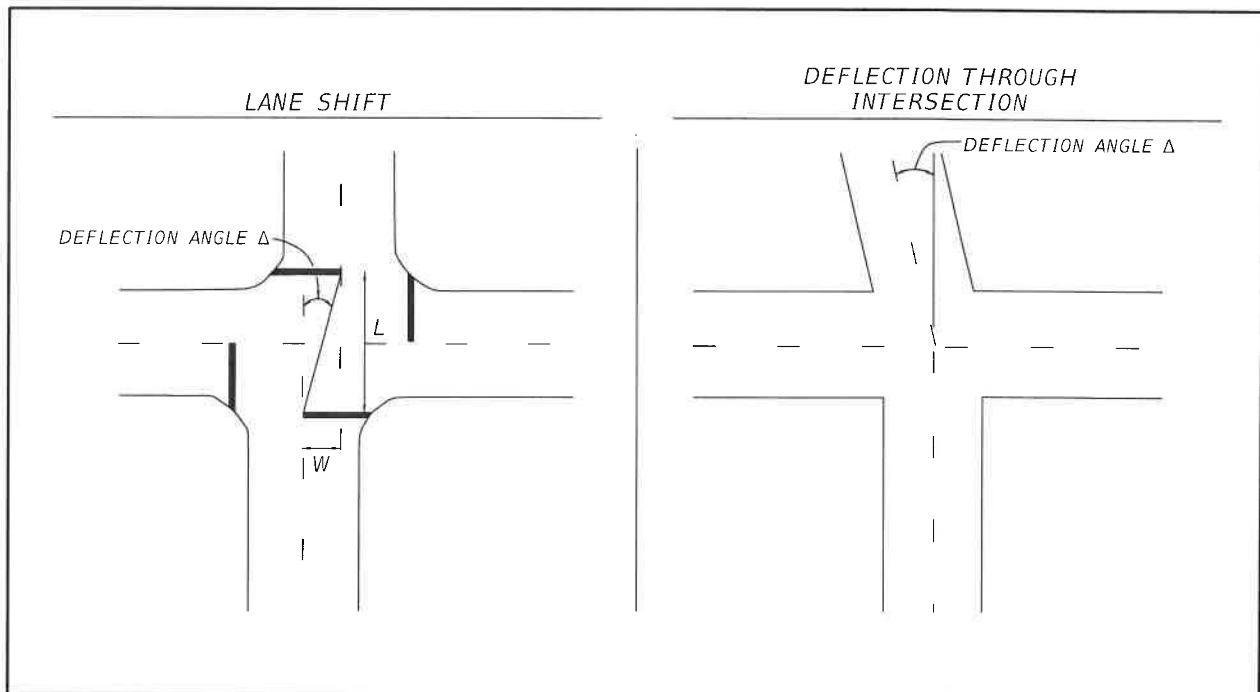
The point where tangents intersect is known as the point of intersection (PI). Although the use of a PI with no horizontal curve is discouraged, there may be conditions where it is necessary. The maximum deflection criteria without a horizontal curve are as follows:

- Flush shoulder and curbed roadways with design speed 40 mph and less is $2^{\circ} 00' 00''$.
- Flush shoulder roadways with design speed 45 mph and greater is $0^{\circ} 45' 00''$.
- Curbed roadways with design speed 45 mph and greater is $1^{\circ} 00' 00''$.
- High speed curbed roadways with design speed 50 mph and greater is $0^{\circ} 45' 00''$.

Although deflections thru intersections are discouraged, there may be conditions where it is necessary. The maximum deflection angles at intersections to be used in establishing the horizontal alignment are given in Table 3 – 7 Maximum Deflection Angle Through Intersection.

Table 3 – 7 Maximum Deflection Angle Through Intersection

| Design Speed (mph) | | | | | |
|--------------------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| ≤ 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 |
| 16° 00' | 11° 00' | 8° 00' | 6° 00' | 5° 00' | 3° 00' |



Notes 1. The deflection angle used is not to cause a lane shift (W) of more than 6 feet from stop bar to stop bar.

Curves on main roadways should be sufficiently long to avoid the appearance of a kink. Gently flowing alignment is generally more pleasing in appearance, as well as, superior from a safety standpoint. Flatter curvature with shorter tangents is preferable to sharp curves connected by

long tangents; i.e., avoid using minimum horizontal curve lengths. Table 3-8 Minimum Lengths of Horizontal Curves provides minimum horizontal curve lengths that should be used in establishing the horizontal alignment.

Table 3 – 8 Minimum Lengths of Horizontal Curves

| Curve Length Based on Design Speed | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|------|------|------|------|
| Design Speed (mph) | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| Arterials, Collectors (Length in feet = 15 x Design Speed, but not less than 400 feet) | 400 | 450 | 525 | 600 | 675 | 750 | 825 | 900 | 975 | 1050 |
| Freeways - Mainline (Length in feet = 30 x Design Speed) | -- | -- | -- | -- | -- | 1500 | 1650 | 1800 | 1950 | 2100 |
| Curve Length Based on Deflection Angle | | | | | | | | | | |
| Deflection Angle (degrees) | 5° | | 4° | | 3° | | 2° | | 1° | |
| Curve Length (feet) | 500 | | 600 | | 700 | | 800 | | 900 | |
| Notes: | | | | | | | | | | |
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Horizontal curve length should be the greater of the lengths based on design speed and length based on deflection angle. If the curve lengths for arterials and collectors cannot be attained, provide the greatest attainable length possible, but not less than 400 feet. If the curve lengths for mainline freeways cannot be attained, provide the greatest attainable length possible, but not less than the lengths used for arterials and collectors. Curve length shall provide for full superelevation within the curve of not less than 200 ft. (Rural) or 100 ft. (Urban). | | | | | | | | | | |

Compound curves are sometimes used for turning roadways at intersections. For turning roadways and intersections a ratio of 2:1 (where the flatter radius precedes the sharper radius in the direction of travel) is acceptable. The arc lengths of compound curves for turning roadways when followed by a curve of one half radius or preceded by a curve of double radius should be as shown in Table 3 – 9 Length of Compound Curves on Turning Roadways.

Table 3 – 9 Length of Compound Curves on Turning Roadways

| Radius (feet) | 100 | 150 | 200 | 250 | 300 | 400 | ≥ 500 |
|-----------------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| Desirable Arc Length (feet) | 65 | 70 | 100 | 120 | 150 | 180 | 200 |
| Minimum Arc Length (feet) | 40 | 50 | 65 | 85 | 100 | 120 | 150 |

C.4.c Superelevation

In the design of street and highway curves, it is necessary to establish a proper relationship between curvature of the roadway and design speed. The use of superelevation (rotation of the roadway about its axis) is employed to counteract centrifugal force and allow drivers to comfortably and safely travel through curves at the design speed.

The terms Rural and Urban used in this section reflect the location of the project. In addition to the criteria provided below, additional information regarding superelevation given in the Department's FDOT Design Manual, and *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)*, may be considered.

C.4.c.1 Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways

The superelevation rates for high speed (50 mph or greater) roadways are provided in Table 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways

(e max =0.10). These rates are based on Method 5 from the **2011 AASHTO Greenbook** using a maximum rate of 0.10 foot per foot of roadway width. Table 3 – 10 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown without superelevation.

C.4.c.2 Low Speed Urban Roadways

For low speed (45 mph and less) roadways in urban areas, various factors combine to make superelevation difficult, if not impractical, in many built-up areas. Such factors include:

- Wide pavement areas
- Need to meet grade of adjacent property
- Surface drainage considerations
- Frequency of cross streets, alleys, and driveways

Superelevation rates for low speed urban roadways therefore rely more heavily on side friction than rates used for high speed roadways and the maximum superelevation rate is set at 0.05 foot per foot. Separate criteria are provided for low speed Local Roads vs. low speed Arterials and Collectors as follows:

Low Speed Urban Arterials and Collectors: Superelevation rates for low speed urban arterials and collectors are provided in Table 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors (e_{max} = 0.05). These rates are based on the Department's superelevation criteria for low speed arterials and collectors. Table 3 – 11 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown without superelevation.

Low Speed Local Roads: Minimum radii for design superelevation rates for low speed local roads are provided in Table 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates, Low Speed Local Roads (e_{max} = 0.05). These rates are based on Method 2 from the 2011 AASHTO Greenbook. Table 3 – 12 also provides the minimum radius required for normal crown (-0.02 ft/ft) without superelevation.

**Table 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways
 and High Speed Urban Highways (e max = 0.10)**

| Tabulated Values | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| Degree of Curve <i>D</i> | Radius <i>R</i> (ft.) | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | |
| | | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| 0° 15' | 22,918 | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 0° 30' | 11,459 | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 0° 45' | 7,639 | NC | NC | NC | NC | RC | RC | 0.023 | 0.025 | 0.028 |
| 1° 00' | 5,730 | NC | NC | NC | RC | 0.021 | 0.025 | 0.030 | 0.033 | 0.037 |
| 1° 15' | 4,584 | NC | NC | RC | 0.022 | 0.026 | 0.031 | 0.036 | 0.041 | 0.046 |
| 1° 30' | 3,820 | NC | RC | 0.021 | 0.026 | 0.031 | 0.037 | 0.043 | 0.048 | 0.054 |
| | * <i>R</i> _{NC} | | | | | | | | | |
| 2° 00' | 2,865 | RC | 0.022 | 0.028 | 0.034 | 0.040 | 0.048 | 0.055 | 0.062 | 0.070 |
| | * <i>R</i> _{RC} | | | | | | | | | |
| 2° 30' | 2,292 | 0.021 | 0.028 | 0.034 | 0.041 | 0.049 | 0.058 | 0.067 | 0.075 | 0.085 |
| 3° 00' | 1,910 | 0.025 | 0.032 | 0.040 | 0.049 | 0.057 | 0.067 | 0.077 | 0.087 | 0.096 |
| 3° 30' | 1,637 | 0.029 | 0.037 | 0.046 | 0.055 | 0.065 | 0.075 | 0.086 | 0.095 | 0.100 |
| 4° 00' | 1,432 | 0.033 | 0.042 | 0.051 | 0.061 | 0.072 | 0.083 | 0.093 | 0.099 | Dmax = 3° 30' |
| 5° 00' | 1,146 | 0.040 | 0.050 | 0.061 | 0.072 | 0.083 | 0.094 | 0.098 | Dmax = 4° 15' | |
| 6° 00' | 955 | 0.046 | 0.058 | 0.070 | 0.082 | 0.092 | 0.099 | Dmax = 5° 15' | | |
| 7° 00' | 819 | 0.053 | 0.065 | 0.078 | 0.089 | 0.098 | Dmax = 6° 30' | | | |
| 8° 00' | 716 | 0.058 | 0.071 | 0.084 | 0.095 | 0.100 | | | | |
| 9° 00' | 637 | 0.063 | 0.077 | 0.089 | 0.098 | Dmax = 8° 15' | | | | |
| 10° 00' | 573 | 0.068 | 0.082 | 0.094 | 0.100 | | | | | |
| 11° 00' | 521 | 0.072 | 0.086 | 0.097 | Dmax = 10° 15' | | | | | |
| 12° 00' | 477 | 0.076 | 0.090 | 0.099 | | | | | | |
| 13° 00' | 441 | 0.080 | 0.093 | 0.100 | | | | | | |
| 14° 00' | 409 | 0.083 | 0.096 | Dmax = 13° 15' | | | | | | |
| 15° 00' | 382 | 0.086 | 0.098 | | | | | | | |
| 16° 00' | 358 | 0.089 | 0.099 | | | | | | | |
| 18° 00' | 318 | 0.093 | Dmax = 17° 45' | | | | | | | |
| 20° 00' | 286 | 0.097 | | | | | | | | |
| 22° 00' | 260 | 0.099 | | | | | | | | |
| 24° 00' | 239 | 0.100 | | | | | | | | |
| | | Dmax = 24° 45' | | | | | | | | |
| * NC/RC and RC/e Break Points (Radius in feet) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Break Points | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | | |
| | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 | |
| <i>R</i> _{NC} | 3349 | 4384 | 5560 | 6878 | 8337 | 9949 | 11709 | 13164 | 14714 | |
| <i>R</i> _{RC} | 2471 | 3238 | 4110 | 5087 | 6171 | 7372 | 8686 | 9783 | 10955 | |
| e = NC if $R \geq R_{NC}$ e = RC if $R < R_{NC}$ and $R \geq R_{RC}$ | | | | | | | | | | |

NC = Normal Crown (-0.02) RC = Reverse Crown (+0.02)

*R*_{NC} = Minimum Radius for NC *R*_{RC} = Minimum Radius for RC

Rates for intermediate *D* and *R*'s are to be interpolated.

**Table 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors
 ($e_{max} = 0.05$)**

| Degree of Curve <i>D</i> | Radius <i>R</i> (ft.) | Tabulated Values | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| | | Design Speed (mph) | | | |
| | | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 |
| 2° 00' | 2,865 | NC | NC | NC | NC |
| 2° 15' | 2,546 | | | | |
| 2° 45' | 2,083 | | | | NC |
| 3° 00' | 1,910 | | | | RC |
| 3° 45' | 1,528 | | | NC | |
| 4° 00' | 1,432 | | | RC | |
| 4° 45' | 1,206 | | | | |
| 5° 00' | 1,146 | | NC | | |
| 5° 15' | 1,091 | | RC | | |
| 5° 30' | 1,042 | | | | |
| 5° 45' | 996 | | | | |
| 6° 00' | 955 | | | | RC |
| 6° 15' | 917 | | | | 0.022 |
| 6° 30' | 881 | | | | 0.024 |
| 6° 45' | 849 | | | | 0.027 |
| 7° 00' | 819 | NC | | | 0.030 |
| 7° 15' | 790 | RC | | | 0.033 |
| 7° 30' | 764 | | | | 0.037 |
| 7° 45' | 739 | | | | 0.041 |
| 8° 00' | 716 | | | RC | 0.045 |
| 8° 15' | 694 | | | 0.022 | 0.050 |
| 8° 30' | 674 | | | 0.025 | Dmax = 8° 15' |
| 8° 45' | 655 | | | 0.027 | |
| 9° 00' | 637 | | | 0.030 | |
| 9° 30' | 603 | | | 0.034 | |
| 10° 00' | 573 | | | 0.040 | |
| 10° 30' | 546 | | RC | 0.047 | |
| 11° 00' | 521 | | 0.023 | Dmax = 10° 45' | |
| 11° 30' | 498 | | 0.026 | | |
| 12° 00' | 477 | | 0.030 | | |
| 13° 00' | 441 | | 0.036 | | |
| 14° 00' | 409 | RC | 0.045 | | |
| 15° 00' | 382 | 0.023 | Dmax = 14° 15' | | |
| 16° 00' | 358 | 0.027 | | | |
| 17° 00' | 337 | 0.032 | | | |
| 18° 00' | 318 | 0.038 | | | |
| 19° 00' | 302 | 0.043 | | | |
| 20° 00' | 286 | 0.050 | | | |
| | | Dmax = 20° 00' | | | |

NC = Normal Crown (-0.02) RC = Reverse Crown (+0.02)

Rates for intermediate D and R's are to be interpolated.

**Table 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates
 Low Speed Local Roads ($e_{\max} = 0.05$)**

| e - ft/ft | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|------|
| | 10 | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 |
| 0.05 | 16 | 41 | 83 | 149 | 240 | 355 | 508 | 675 |
| 0.045 | 16 | 41 | 85 | 152 | 245 | 363 | 520 | 692 |
| 0.04 | 16 | 42 | 86 | 154 | 250 | 371 | 533 | 711 |
| 0.035 | 16 | 42 | 87 | 157 | 255 | 380 | 547 | 730 |
| 0.03 | 16 | 43 | 89 | 160 | 261 | 389 | 561 | 750 |
| 0.025 | 16 | 43 | 90 | 163 | 267 | 398 | 577 | 771 |
| 0.02 | 17 | 44 | 92 | 167 | 273 | 408 | 593 | 794 |
| 0.015 | 17 | 45 | 94 | 170 | 279 | 419 | 610 | 818 |
| 0.01 | 17 | 45 | 95 | 174 | 286 | 430 | 627 | 844 |
| 0.005 | 17 | 46 | 97 | 177 | 293 | 441 | 646 | 871 |
| 0 | 18 | 47 | 99 | 181 | 300 | 454 | 667 | 900 |
| -0.01 | 18 | 48 | 103 | 189 | 316 | 480 | 711 | 964 |
| -0.02 | 19 | 50 | 107 | 198 | 333 | 510 | 762 | 1038 |
| -0.03 ¹ | 19 | 52 | 111 | 208 | 353 | 544 | 821 | 1125 |
| -0.04 ¹ | 20 | 54 | 116 | 219 | 375 | 583 | 889 | 1227 |
| -0.05 ¹ | 20 | 56 | 121 | 231 | 400 | 628 | 970 | 1350 |

1. Negative superelevation values beyond -0.02 feet per foot should be used only for unpaved surfaces such as gravel, crushed stone, and earth.

C.4.d Maximum Curvature/Minimum Radius

Where a directional change in alignment is required, every effort should be made to utilize the smallest degree (largest radius) curvature possible. The use of the maximum degree of curvature should be avoided when possible. Design speed maximum degree of curvature or minimum radius for the maximum superelevation rates are provided in Tables 3 – 10 Superelevation Rates for Rural Highways, Urban Freeways and High Speed Urban Highways, 3 – 11 Superelevation Rates for Low Speed Arterials and Collectors, and 3 – 12 Minimum Radii (feet) for Design Superelevation Rates Low Speed Local Roads. The use of sharper curvature would call for superelevation beyond the limit considered practical or for operation with tire friction beyond safe or comfortable limits or both. The maximum degree of curvature or minimum radius is a significant value in alignment design.

C.4.e Superelevation Transition (superelevation runoffs plus tangent runoff)

Superelevation runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to transition the change in cross slope from a section with the adverse crown removed (level) to the fully superelevated section, or vice versa. Tangent runoff is the general term denoting the length of street or highway needed to accomplish the change in cross slope from a normal cross section to a section with the adverse crown removed, or vice versa.

The standard superelevation transition places 80% of the transition on the tangent and 20% on the curve. In transition sections where the travel lane(s) cross slope is less than 1.5 %, one of the following grade criteria should be applied:

- Maintain a minimum profile grade of 0.5%, or
- Maintain a minimum edge of pavement grade of 0.2% (0.5% for curbed roadways).

When superelevation is required for curves in opposite directions on a common tangent (reverse curves), a suitable distance is required between the curves. This suitable tangent length should be determined as follows:

- 80% of the transition for each curve should be located on the tangent.
- The suitable tangent length is the sum of the two 80% distances, or greater.
- Where alignment constraints dictate a less than desirable tangent length between curves, an adjustment of the 80/20 superelevation transition treatment is allowed (where up to 50% of the transition may be placed on the curve).

Superelevation transition slope rates used to compute transition lengths are provided in Table 3 –13 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates. The 2011 AASHTO Greenbook provides additional information on superelevation transition design.

The Department's *Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction* provide additional information on superelevation transitions for various

sections and methods for determining length of transition.

Table 3 – 13 Superelevation Transition Slope Rates

| Number of Lanes in One Direction | High Speed Roadways | | | | Low Speed Roadways | | |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|-------|-------|-------|--------------------|-------|-------|
| | Design Speed (mph) | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | |
| | 25-40 | 45-50 | 55-60 | 65-70 | 25-35 | 40 | 45 |
| 1-Lane & 2-Lane | 1:175 | 1:200 | 1:225 | 1:250 | 1:100 | 1:125 | 1:150 |
| 3-Lane | --- | 1:160 | 1:180 | 1:200 | | | |
| 4-Lane or more | --- | 1:150 | 1:170 | 1:190 | | | |

High Speed Roadways:

- The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition is 100 feet.
- For additional information on transitions, see the [Standard Plans, Index 000-510](#).

Low Speed Roadways:

- The length of superelevation transition is to be determined by the relative slope rate between the travel way edge of pavement and the profile grade, except that the minimum length of transition is 50 feet for design speeds 25-35 mph and 75 ft. for design speeds 40-45.
- A slope rate of 1:125 may be used for 45 mph under restricted conditions.
- For additional information on transitions, see [Standard Plans, Index 000-511](#).

Spiral curves may be used to transition from the tangent to the curve. Where the spiral curve is employed, its length is used to make the entire superelevation transition. For additional information on the use of spiral curves, see the **2011 AASHTO Greenbook**.

C.4.f Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves

Where there are sight obstructions (such as walls, cut slopes, buildings, and longitudinal barriers) on the inside of curves or the inside of the median lane on divided highways and their removal to increase sight distance is impractical, a design may need adjustment in the normal highway cross section or alignment. With sight distance for the design speed as a control, make the appropriate adjustments to provide adequate stopping sight distance. Figure 3 – 1A Horizontal Sight Line Offset Distances for Stopping Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves and Figure 3 – 1B Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance show the horizontal sight line offsets needed for clear sight areas that satisfy stopping sight distance criteria presented in Table 3 – 3 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances for horizontal curves of radii on flat grades.

**Figure 3 – 1A Horizontal Sight Line Offset Distances
 for Stopping Sight Distance on Horizontal Curves**

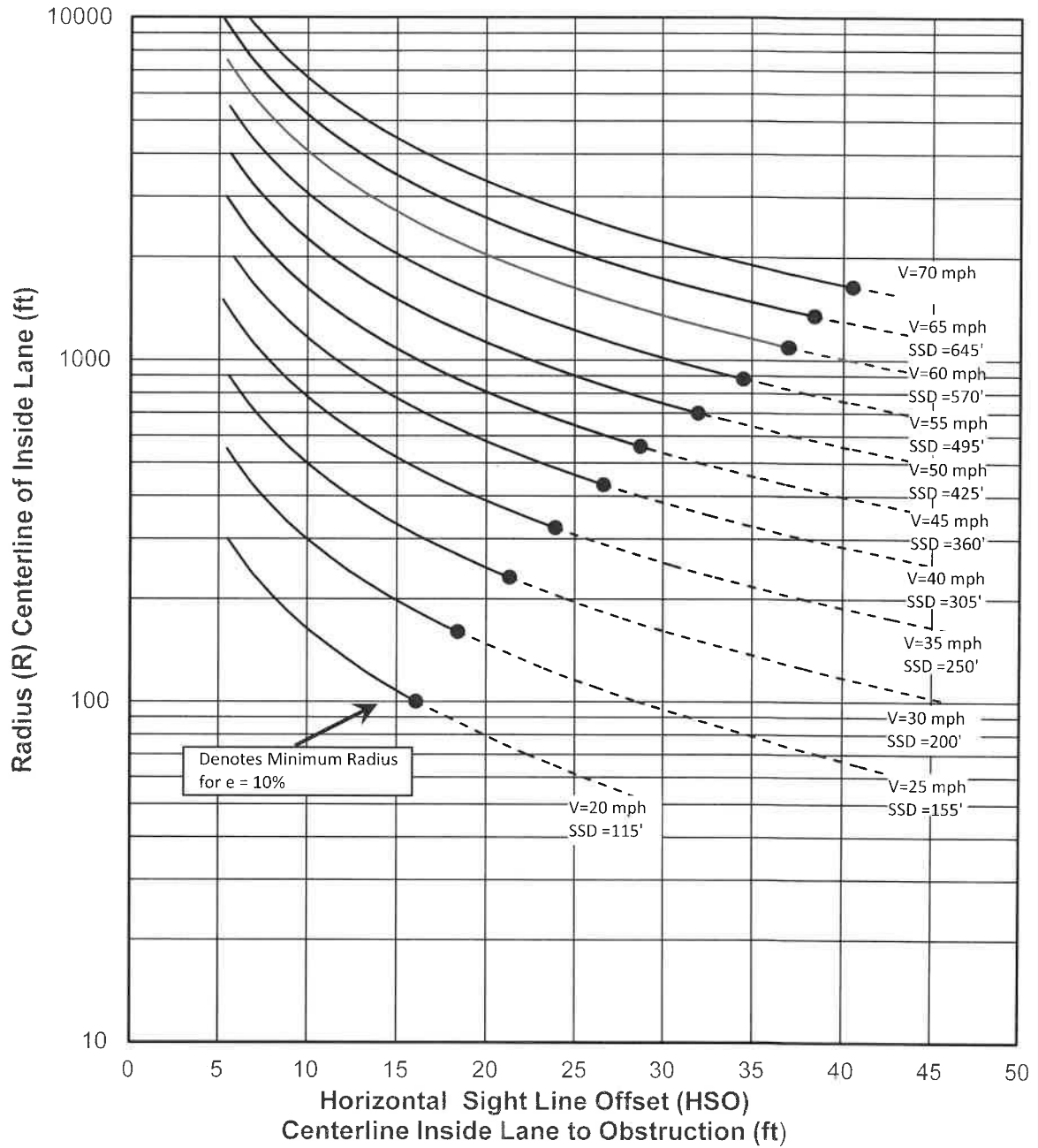
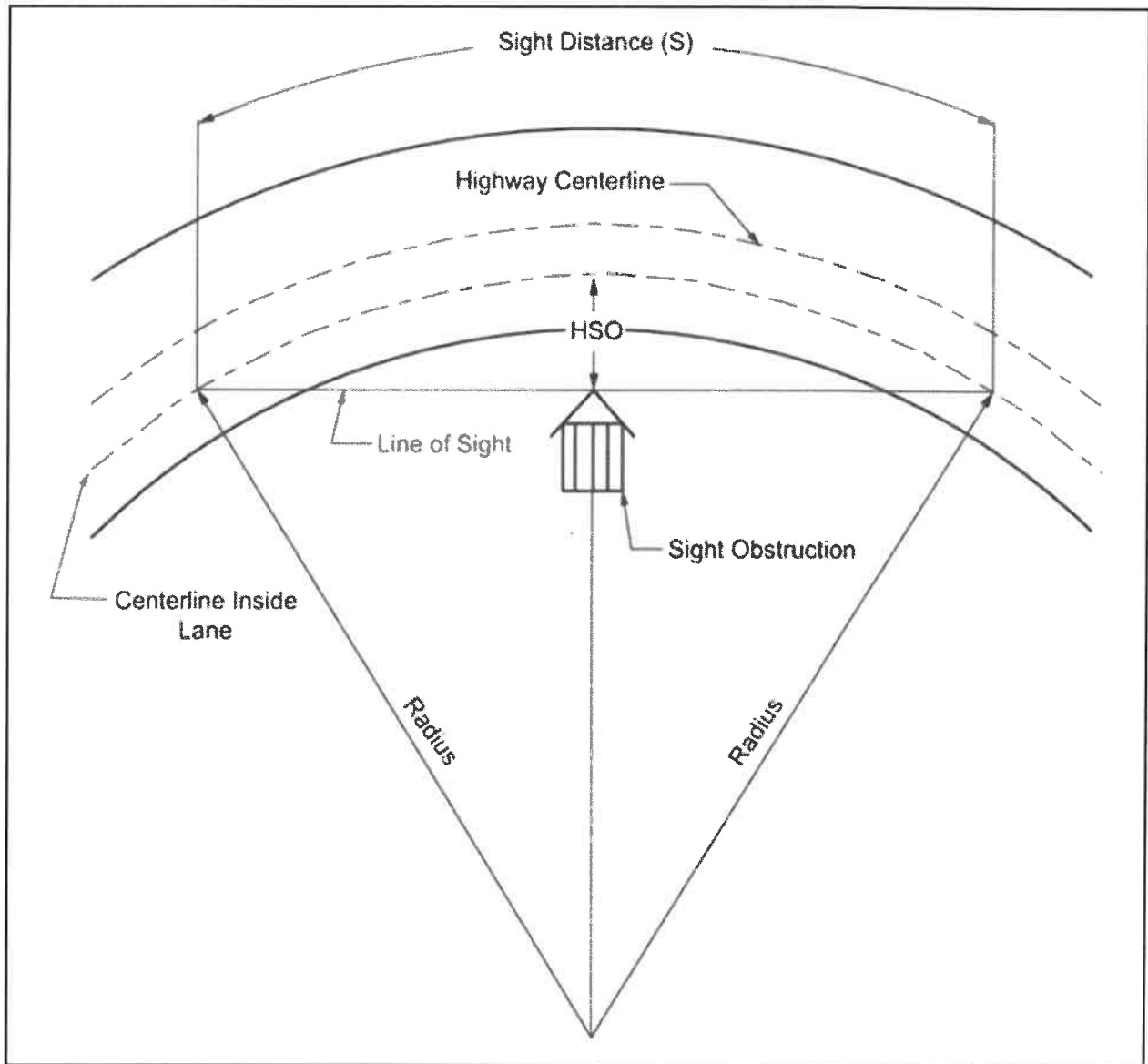


Figure 3 – 1B Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance



HSO – Horizontal Sight Distance

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Figure 3 – 23. Diagram Illustrating Components for Determining Horizontal Sight Distance

Table 3 – 14 Horizontal Curvature

| Lateral Clearance from Edge of Traveled Way to Obstruction For Maximum Curvature (Degrees), Based on Line of Sight On Inside Lane (Lateral Clearance = $M_{\text{Inside Lane}} - 6'$) Based on $e_{\text{MAX}} = 0.10$ | | |
|--|-------------------|------------------|
| Design Speed (mph) | Maximum Curvature | Clearance (feet) |
| 20 | 57° 45' | 11 |
| 25 | 36° 15' | 13 |
| 30 | 24° 45' | 16 |
| 35 | 17° 45' | 19 |
| 40 | 13° 30' | 21 |
| 45 | 10° 15' | 23 |
| 50 | 8° 15' | 27 |
| 55 | 6° 30' | 29 |
| 60 | 5° 15' | 31 |
| 65 | 4° 15' | 33 |
| 70 | 3° 30' | 35 |

C.4.g Lane Widening on Curves

The traveled way should be widened on sharp curves due to the increased difficulty for the driver to follow the proper path. Trucks and transit vehicles experience additional difficulty due to the fact that the rear wheels may track considerably inside the front wheels thus requiring additional width. Adjustments to traveled way widths for mainline and turning roadways are given in Tables 3 – 15A Calculated and Design Values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way and 3 – 15B Adjustments or Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way. A transition length shall be introduced in changing to an increased/decreased lane width. This transition length shall be proportional to the increase/decrease in traveled way width in a ratio of not less than 50 feet of transition length for each foot of change in lane width.

| Radius of Curve (feet) | | Roadway width = 24 feet. | | | | | | | | | | Roadway width = 22 feet. | | | | | | | | | | Roadway width = 20 feet. | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|------|--------------------------|------|------|------|------|--------------------|------|------|------|------|--------------------------|------|------|------|------|--------------------|------|------|------|------|--------------------------|------|------|------|------|--------------------|------|------|------|------|----|----|----|
| | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | |
| | | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 30 | 35 | 40 |
| 7000 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.7 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.7 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.1 | | | |
| 6500 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.2 | | | |
| 6000 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.2 | 1.2 | 1.2 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.2 | 2.3 | | | |
| 5500 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.9 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.9 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.2 | 2.3 | 2.4 | 2.5 | | | |
| 5000 | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 2.0 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.2 | 2.3 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.7 | | | |
| 4500 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 0.8 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 2.3 | 2.4 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.1 | | | |
| 4000 | 0.0 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.3 | 3.4 | 3.5 | | | |
| 3500 | 0.1 | 0.2 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.3 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 2.6 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.3 | 3.4 | 3.5 | 3.6 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.9 | | | |
| 3000 | 0.3 | 0.4 | 0.4 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.3 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.3 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 3.1 | 3.3 | 3.5 | 3.6 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.9 | 4.0 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 4.3 | 4.4 | | | |
| 2500 | 0.5 | 0.6 | 0.7 | 0.8 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.1 | 1.3 | 2.3 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.2 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 3.9 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 4.3 | 4.4 | 4.5 | 4.6 | 4.7 | 4.8 | | | |
| 2000 | 0.7 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.4 | 1.6 | 2.7 | 2.8 | 2.9 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.4 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 3.5 | 4.4 | 4.6 | 4.7 | 4.9 | 5.1 | 5.2 | 5.3 | 5.4 | 5.5 | 5.6 | 5.7 | | | |
| 1800 | 0.9 | 1.0 | 1.1 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.6 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 3.4 | 3.6 | 3.7 | 3.9 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 4.3 | 4.3 | 4.3 | 4.3 | 5.2 | 5.4 | 5.6 | 5.8 | 6.0 | 6.1 | 6.2 | 6.3 | 6.4 | 6.5 | 6.6 | | | |
| 1600 | 1.1 | 1.2 | 1.3 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 4.4 | 4.6 | 4.8 | 5.0 | 5.1 | 5.1 | 5.1 | 5.1 | 6.0 | 6.2 | 6.4 | 6.6 | 6.8 | 7.0 | 7.1 | 7.2 | 7.3 | 7.4 | 7.5 | | | |
| 1400 | 1.3 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 1.9 | 2.0 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 4.8 | 5.0 | 5.2 | 5.4 | 5.6 | 5.8 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 6.0 | 7.0 | 7.2 | 7.4 | 7.6 | 7.8 | 8.0 | 8.1 | 8.2 | 8.3 | 8.4 | 8.5 | | | |
| 1200 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 1.9 | 2.1 | 2.2 | 2.4 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 2.5 | 2.6 | 5.6 | 5.9 | 6.1 | 6.3 | 6.5 | 6.7 | 6.9 | 6.9 | 6.9 | 6.9 | 8.0 | 8.2 | 8.4 | 8.6 | 8.8 | 9.0 | 9.1 | 9.2 | 9.3 | 9.4 | 9.5 | | | |
| 1000 | 2.1 | 2.3 | 2.4 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.0 | 3.1 | 6.5 | 6.8 | 7.1 | 7.3 | 7.5 | 7.7 | 7.9 | 7.9 | 7.9 | 7.9 | 9.2 | 9.4 | 9.6 | 9.8 | 10.0 | 10.1 | 10.2 | 10.3 | 10.4 | 10.5 | 10.6 | | | |
| 900 | 2.4 | 2.6 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.1 | 3.2 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.3 | 3.4 | 7.4 | 7.7 | 8.0 | 8.2 | 8.4 | 8.6 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 8.8 | 10.4 | 10.6 | 10.8 | 11.0 | 11.2 | 11.3 | 11.4 | 11.5 | 11.6 | 11.7 | 11.8 | | | |
| 800 | 2.7 | 2.9 | 3.1 | 3.3 | 3.5 | 3.6 | 3.7 | 3.7 | 3.7 | 3.8 | 8.4 | 8.7 | 9.0 | 9.2 | 9.4 | 9.6 | 9.8 | 9.8 | 9.8 | 9.8 | 11.6 | 11.8 | 12.0 | 12.2 | 12.4 | 12.5 | 12.6 | 12.7 | 12.8 | 12.9 | 13.0 | | | |
| 700 | 3.2 | 3.4 | 3.6 | 3.8 | 4.0 | 4.0 | 4.1 | 4.1 | 4.1 | 4.2 | 9.4 | 9.7 | 10.0 | 10.2 | 10.4 | 10.6 | 10.8 | 10.8 | 10.8 | 10.8 | 12.8 | 13.0 | 13.2 | 13.4 | 13.6 | 13.7 | 13.8 | 13.9 | 14.0 | 14.1 | 14.2 | | | |
| 600 | 3.8 | 4.0 | 4.2 | 4.4 | 4.6 | 4.6 | 4.7 | 4.7 | 4.7 | 4.8 | 10.4 | 10.7 | 11.0 | 11.2 | 11.4 | 11.6 | 11.8 | 11.8 | 11.8 | 11.8 | 14.0 | 14.2 | 14.4 | 14.6 | 14.8 | 14.9 | 15.0 | 15.1 | 15.2 | 15.3 | 15.4 | | | |
| 500 | 4.6 | 4.9 | 5.1 | 5.3 | 5.3 | 5.4 | 5.4 | 5.4 | 5.4 | 5.5 | 11.4 | 11.7 | 12.0 | 12.2 | 12.4 | 12.6 | 12.8 | 12.8 | 12.8 | 12.8 | 15.4 | 15.6 | 15.8 | 16.0 | 16.2 | 16.3 | 16.4 | 16.5 | 16.6 | 16.7 | 16.8 | | | |
| 450 | 5.2 | 5.4 | 5.7 | 5.7 | 5.7 | 5.8 | 5.8 | 5.8 | 5.8 | 5.9 | 12.4 | 12.7 | 13.0 | 13.2 | 13.4 | 13.6 | 13.8 | 13.8 | 13.8 | 13.8 | 16.4 | 16.6 | 16.8 | 17.0 | 17.2 | 17.3 | 17.4 | 17.5 | 17.6 | 17.7 | 17.8 | | | |
| 400 | 5.9 | 6.1 | 6.4 | 6.4 | 6.4 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.6 | 13.4 | 13.7 | 14.0 | 14.2 | 14.4 | 14.6 | 14.8 | 14.8 | 14.8 | 14.8 | 17.4 | 17.6 | 17.8 | 18.0 | 18.2 | 18.3 | 18.4 | 18.5 | 18.6 | 18.7 | 18.8 | | | |
| 350 | 6.8 | 7.0 | 7.3 | 7.3 | 7.3 | 7.4 | 7.4 | 7.4 | 7.4 | 7.5 | 14.4 | 14.7 | 15.0 | 15.2 | 15.4 | 15.6 | 15.8 | 15.8 | 15.8 | 15.8 | 18.4 | 18.6 | 18.8 | 19.0 | 19.2 | 19.3 | 19.4 | 19.5 | 19.6 | 19.7 | 19.8 | | | |
| 300 | 7.9 | 8.2 | 8.2 | 8.2 | 8.2 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.3 | 8.4 | 15.4 | 15.7 | 16.0 | 16.2 | 16.4 | 16.6 | 16.8 | 16.8 | 16.8 | 16.8 | 19.4 | 19.6 | 19.8 | 20.0 | 20.2 | 20.3 | 20.4 | 20.5 | 20.6 | 20.7 | 20.8 | | | |
| 250 | 9.6 | 9.6 | 9.6 | 9.6 | 9.6 | 9.7 | 9.7 | 9.7 | 9.7 | 9.8 | 16.4 | 16.7 | 17.0 | 17.2 | 17.4 | 17.6 | 17.8 | 17.8 | 17.8 | 17.8 | 20.4 | 20.6 | 20.8 | 21.0 | 21.2 | 21.3 | 21.4 | 21.5 | 21.6 | 21.7 | 21.8 | | | |
| 200 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 12.0 | 12.1 | 12.1 | 12.1 | 12.1 | 12.2 | 17.4 | 17.7 | 18.0 | 18.2 | 18.4 | 18.6 | 18.8 | 18.8 | 18.8 | 18.8 | 21.4 | 21.6 | 21.8 | 22.0 | 22.2 | 22.3 | 22.4 | 22.5 | 22.6 | 22.7 | 22.8 | | | |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 – 26b Calculated and Design values for Traveled Way Widening on Open Highway Curves.
 Notes: 1. Values shown are for WB-62 design vehicle and represent widening in feet. For other design vehicles, use adjustments in Table 3-15B.
 2. Values less than 2.0 feet may be disregarded. For 3-lane roadways For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5.

**Table 3 – 15B Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values
 on Open Highway Curves
 (Two-Lane Highways, One-Way or Two-Way)**

| Radius of Curve (FEET) | Design Vehicle | | | | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------|-------|--|--|--|-------|--------|
| | SU-30 | WB-40 | | | | WB-67 | WB-67D |
| 7000 | -1.2 | -1.2 | | | | 0.1 | -0.1 |
| 6500 | -1.3 | -1.2 | | | | 0.1 | -0.1 |
| 6000 | -1.3 | -1.2 | | | | 0.1 | -0.2 |
| 5500 | -1.3 | -1.2 | | | | 0.1 | -0.2 |
| 5000 | -1.3 | -1.3 | | | | 0.1 | -0.2 |
| 4500 | -1.4 | -1.3 | | | | 0.1 | -0.2 |
| 4000 | -1.4 | -1.3 | | | | 0.1 | -0.2 |
| 3500 | -1.5 | -1.4 | | | | 0.1 | -0.3 |
| 3000 | -1.6 | -1.4 | | | | 0.1 | -0.3 |
| 2500 | -1.7 | -1.5 | | | | 0.2 | -0.4 |
| 2000 | -1.8 | -1.6 | | | | 0.2 | -0.5 |
| 1800 | -1.9 | -1.7 | | | | 0.2 | -0.5 |
| 1600 | -2.0 | -1.8 | | | | 0.2 | -0.6 |
| 1400 | -2.2 | -1.9 | | | | 0.3 | -0.6 |
| 1200 | -2.4 | -2.1 | | | | 0.3 | -0.8 |
| 1000 | -2.7 | -2.3 | | | | 0.4 | -0.9 |
| 900 | -2.8 | -2.4 | | | | 0.4 | -1.0 |
| 800 | -3.1 | -2.6 | | | | 0.5 | -1.1 |
| 700 | -3.4 | -2.9 | | | | 0.6 | -1.3 |
| 600 | -3.8 | -3.2 | | | | 0.7 | -1.5 |
| 500 | -4.3 | -3.6 | | | | 0.8 | -1.8 |
| 450 | -4.7 | -3.9 | | | | 0.9 | -2.0 |
| 400 | -5.2 | -4.3 | | | | 1.0 | -2.3 |
| 350 | -5.8 | -4.7 | | | | 1.1 | -2.6 |
| 300 | -6.6 | -5.4 | | | | 1.3 | -3.0 |
| 250 | -7.7 | -6.3 | | | | 1.6 | -3.6 |
| 200 | -9.4 | -7.6 | | | | 2.0 | -4.6 |

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3 - 27 Adjustments for Traveled Way Widening Values on Open Highway Curves.

- Notes:
1. Adjustments are applied by adding to or subtracting from the values in Table 3-15A.
 2. Adjustments depend only on radius and design vehicle; they are independent of traveled way width and design speed.
 3. For 3-lane roadways, multiply above values by 1.5.
 4. For 4-lane roadways, multiply above values by 2.0.

C.5 Vertical Alignment

C.5.a General Criteria

The selection of vertical alignment should be predicated to a large extent upon the following criteria:

- Obtaining maximum sight distances
- Limiting speed differences (particularly for trucks and buses) by reducing magnitude and length of grades
- A "hidden dip" which would not be apparent to the driver must be avoided.
- Steep grades and sharp crest vertical curves should be avoided at or near intersections.
- Flat grades and long gentle vertical curves should be used whenever possible.

C.5.b Grades

The grades selected for vertical alignment should be as flat as practical, and should not be greater than the value given in Table 3 – 16 Maximum Grades in Percent.

For streets and highways requiring long upgrades, the maximum grade should be reduced so the speed reduction of slow-moving vehicles (e.g., trucks and buses) is not greater than 10 mph. The critical lengths of grade for these speed reductions are shown in Figure 3 – 2 Critical Length Versus Upgrade. Where reduction of grade is not practical, climbing lanes should be provided to meet these speed reduction limitations.

The criteria for a climbing lane and the adjacent shoulder are the same as for any travel lane except that the climbing lane should be clearly designated by the appropriate pavement markings. Entrance to and exit from the climbing lane shall follow the same criteria as other merging traffic lanes; however, the climbing lane should not be terminated until well beyond the crest of the vertical curve. Differences in superelevation should not be sufficient to produce a change in pavement cross slope between the climbing lane and through lane in excess of 0.04 feet per foot.

Recommended minimum gutter grades:
 Rolling terrain - 0.5% Flat terrain - 0.3%

Table 3 – 16 Maximum Grades (in Percent)

| Type of Roadway | Level Terrain | | | | | | | | | | | Rolling Terrain | | | | | | | | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|
| | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | | | | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 | |
| Freeway ¹ | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | 5 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 4 | |
| Arterial | Rural | --- | --- | --- | --- | 5 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 3 | 3 | 3 | --- | --- | --- | --- | 6 | 6 | 5 | 5 | 4 | 4 | 4 |
| | Urban | --- | --- | 8 | 7 | 7 | 6 | 6 | 5 | 5 | --- | --- | --- | --- | 9 | 8 | 8 | 7 | 7 | 6 | 6 | --- | --- |
| Collector ² | Rural | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 6 | 6 | 5 | --- | --- | 10 | 10 | 9 | 9 | 8 | 8 | 7 | 7 | 6 | --- | --- |
| | Urban | 9 | 9 | 9 | 9 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 7 | 6 | --- | --- | 12 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 8 | 7 | --- | --- |
| Local ³ | Rural | 8 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 7 | 6 | 6 | 5 | --- | --- | 11 | 11 | 10 | 10 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | --- | --- |

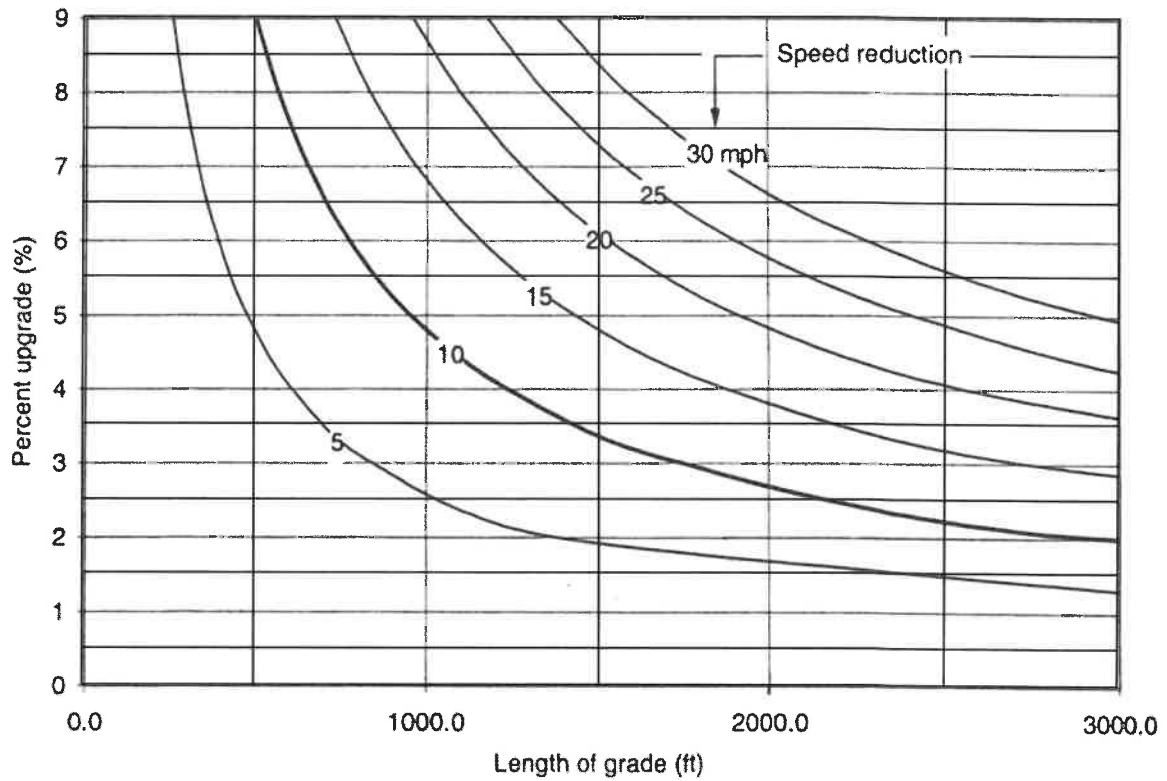
Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Tables 5–2, 6–2, 6–8, 7–2, 7–4, 8–1.

Notes: 1. Grades 1% steeper than the value shown may be provided in urban areas with right of way constraints.

2. Short lengths of grade (≤ 500 feet in length), one-way downgrades, and grades on low volume collectors may be up to 2% steeper than the grades shown above.

3. Residential street grade should be as level as practical, consistent with surrounding terrain, and less than 15%. Streets in commercial or industrial areas should have grades less than 8%, and flatter grades should be encouraged.

Figure 3 – 2 Critical Length Versus Upgrade



**Critical Lengths of Grade for Design, Assumed Typical Heavy Truck
of 200 lb/hp, Entering Speed = 70 mph**

Source: 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Figure 3-28.

C.5.c Vertical Curves

Changes in grade should be connected by a parabolic curve (the vertical offset being proportional to the square of the horizontal distance). Vertical curves are required when the algebraic difference of intersecting grades exceeds the values given in Table 3 – 17 Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve. Table 3 – 18 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves provides additional information.

The length of vertical curves on a crest, as governed by stopping sight distance, is obtained from Figure 3 – 3 Length of Crest Vertical Curve (Stopping Sight Distance). The minimum length for passing sight distance on crest vertical curves shall be based on the K-values as shown in Table 3 – 19 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves (Passing Sight Distance). The minimum length of a sag vertical curve on open road conditions, as governed by vehicle headlight capabilities, is obtained from Figure 3 - 4 Length of Sag Vertical Curve (Headlight Sight Distance).

Wherever feasible, curves longer than the minimum should be considered to improve both aesthetic and safety characteristics.

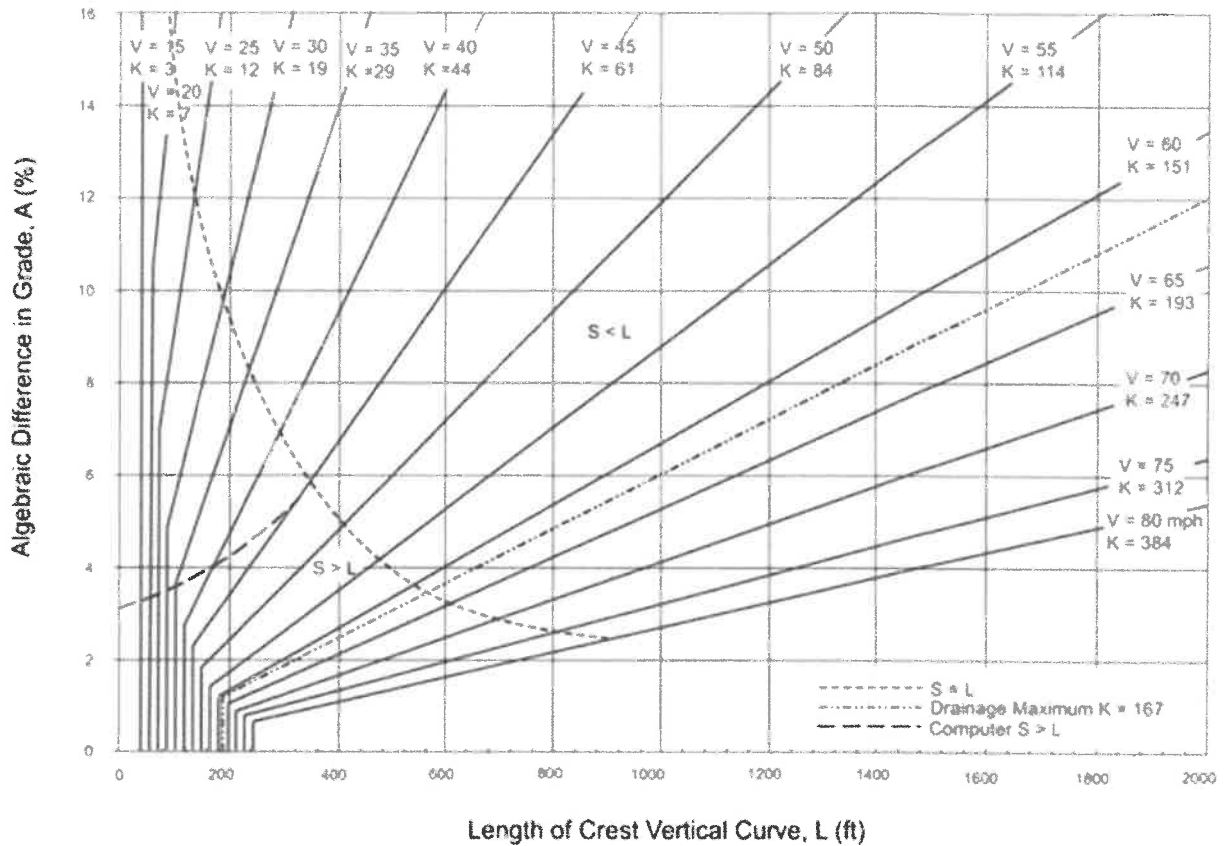
Table 3 – 17 Maximum Change in Grade Without Using Vertical Curve

| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
|------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Maximum Change in Grade in Percent | 1.20 | 1.10 | 1.00 | 0.90 | 0.80 | 0.70 | 0.60 | 0.50 | 0.40 | 0.30 | 0.20 |

**Table 3 – 18 Rounded K Values for Minimum Lengths Vertical Curves
 (Stopping Sight Distance)**

| | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| (Based upon an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2 feet above the road surface) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| $L = KA$ L = Length of Vertical Curve, A = Algebraic Difference of Grades in Percent | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| K Values for Crest Vertical Curves | 7 | 12 | 19 | 29 | 44 | 61 | 84 | 114 | 151 | 193 | 247 |
| K Values for Sag Vertical Curves | 17 | 26 | 37 | 49 | 64 | 79 | 96 | 115 | 136 | 157 | 181 |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The length of vertical curve must never be less than three times the design speed of the highway. • Curve lengths computed from the formula $L = KA$ should be rounded upward when feasible. • The minimum lengths of vertical curves to be used on collectors, arterials and freeways are shown in the table below: | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Minimum Lengths for Vertical Curves on Collectors, Arterials, and Freeways (feet) | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | 50 | 60 | 70 | | |
| Crest Vertical Curves (feet) | | | | | | | 300 | 400 | 500 | | |
| Sag Vertical Curves (feet) | | | | | | | 200 | 300 | 400 | | |

**Figure 3 – 3 Length of Crest Vertical Curve
 (Stopping Sight Distance)**



Source: Figure 3-43 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves – Open Road Conditions, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook

Lengths of crest vertical curves are computed from the formulas:

When S is less than L, $L = AS^2 / 2158$

When S is greater than L, $L = 2S - (2158 / A)$

- A = Algebraic Difference In Grades In Percent
- S = Sight Distance
- L = Minimum Length of Vertical Curve In Feet

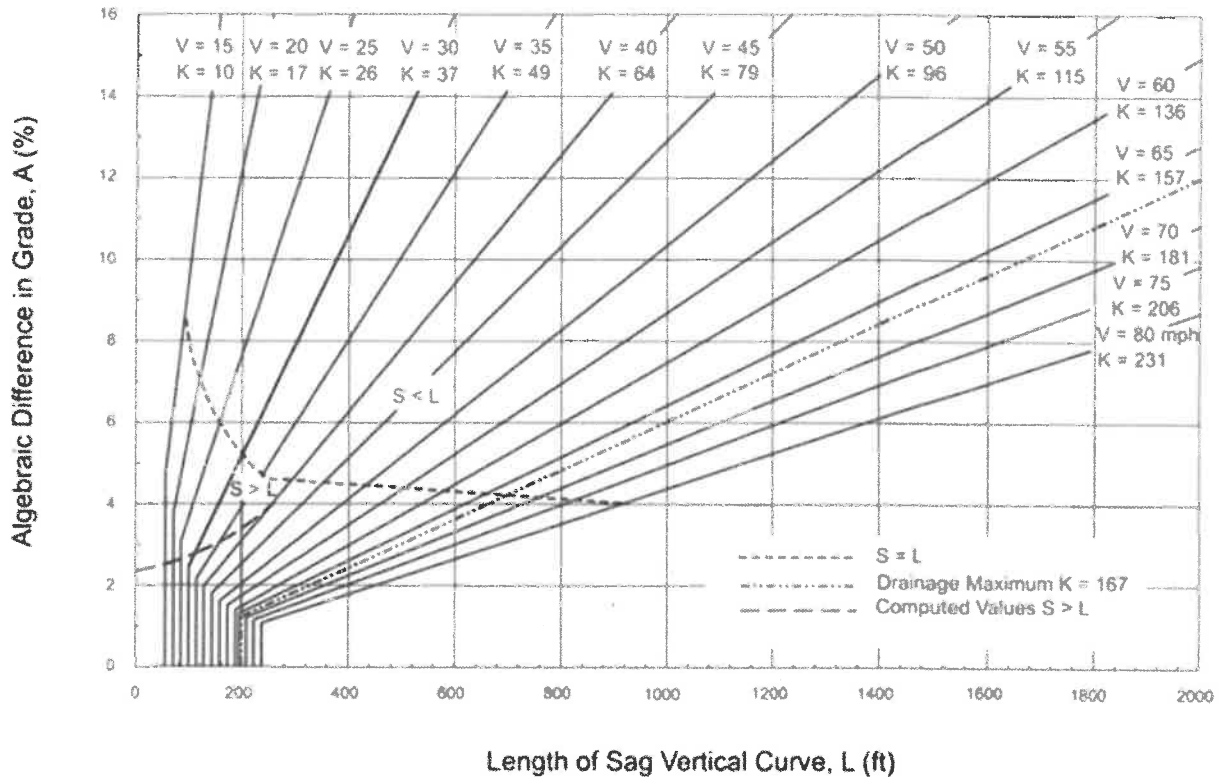
**Table 3 - 19 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves
 (Passing Sight Distance)**

| Based upon an eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.5 feet above the road surface.) | | |
|---|----------------------------------|--|
| $L = KA$ L = Length of Vertical Curve, A = Algebraic Difference of Grades in Percent | | |
| Design Speed (mph) | Passing Sight Distance (feet) | Rate of Vertical Curvature, K ^a |
| 20 | 400 | 57 |
| 25 | 450 | 72 |
| 30 | 500 | 89 |
| 35 | 550 | 108 |
| 40 | 600 | 129 |
| 45 | 700 | 175 |
| 50 | 800 | 229 |
| 55 | 900 | 289 |
| 60 | 1000 | 357 |
| 65 | 1100 | 432 |
| 70 | 1200 | 514 |
| ^a Rate of vertical curvature, K, is the length of curve per percent algebraic difference in intersecting grades (A), $K = L/A$. | | |

Source: Table 3-35 Design Controls for Crest Vertical Curves Based on Passing Sight Distance, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook.

For further information on both crest and sag vertical curves, see Section 3.4.6 Vertical Curves of the **AASHTO Greenbook (2011)**.

**Figure 3 – 4 Length of Sag Vertical Curve
 (Open Road Conditions)**



Source: Figure 3-44 Design Controls for Sag Vertical Curves – Open Road Conditions, 2011 AASHTO Greenbook.

Lengths of sag vertical curves are computed from the formulas:

When S is less than L, $L = AS^2 / (400 + 3.5S)$

When S is greater than L, $L = 2S - ((400 + 3.5S) / A)$

L = Length of Sag Vertical Curve, feet

A = Algebraic Difference in Grades, percent

S = Light Beam Distance, feet

C.6 Alignment Coordination

Horizontal and vertical alignment should not be designed independently. Poor combinations can spoil the good points of a design. Properly coordinated horizontal and vertical alignment can improve appearance, enhance community values, increase safety, and encourage uniform speed. Coordination of horizontal and vertical alignment should begin with preliminary design, during which stage adjustments can be readily made.

Proper combinations of horizontal alignment and profile can be obtained by engineering study and consideration of the following general controls:

- Curvature and grades should be in proper balance. Tangent alignment or flat curvature with steep grades and excessive curvature with flat grades are both poor design. A logical design is a compromise between the two conditions. Wherever feasible the roadway should "roll with" rather than "buck" the terrain.
- Vertical curvature superimposed on horizontal curvature, or vice versa, generally results in a more pleasing facility, but it should be analyzed for effect on driver's view and operation. Changes in profile not in combination with horizontal alignment may result in a series of disconnected humps to the driver for some distance.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the top of a pronounced crest vertical curve. Drivers cannot perceive the horizontal change in alignment, especially at night. This condition can be avoided by setting the horizontal curve so it leads the vertical curve or by making the horizontal curve longer. Suitable design can be made by using design values well above the minimums.
- Sharp horizontal curvature should not be introduced at or near the low point of a pronounced sag vertical curve to prevent an undesirable distorted appearance. Vehicle speeds are often high at the bottom of grades and erratic operation may result, especially at night.
- On divided highways, variation of the median width and the use of independent vertical and horizontal alignment should be considered. Where right of way is available, a superior design without significant additional costs can result from the use of independent alignment.
- Horizontal alignment and profile should be made as flat as possible at interchanges and intersections where sight distance along both highways is important. Sight distances above the minimum are desirable at these locations.

- Alignment should be designed to enhance scenic views for the motorists.
- In residential areas, the alignment should be designed to minimize nuisance to the neighborhood.

C.7 Cross Section Elements

The design of the street or highway cross section should be predicated upon the design speed, terrain, adjacent land use, classification, and the type and volume of traffic expected. The cross section selected should be uniform throughout a given length of street or highway without frequent or abrupt changes. See **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design** for design criteria for roadside design, clear zone, lateral offset, and roadside ditches located within the clear zone.

C.7.a Number of Lanes

The number of travel lanes is determined by several interrelated factors such as capacity, level of service, and service volume. Further information on determining the optimum number of travel lanes can be found in *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)*, and the *Highway Capacity Manual (TRB, 2010)*.

C.7.b Pavement

The paved surface of roadways shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the requirements set forth in **Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction**.

C.7.b.1 Pavement Width

Minimum lane widths for travel lanes, speed change lanes, turn lanes and passing lanes are provided in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths. The table applies to both divided and undivided facilities. For Information on parking lanes, see Section C.7.h Parking of this Chapter.

On existing multilane curbed streets where there is insufficient space for a separate bicycle lane, consideration should be given to using unequal-width lanes. In such cases, the wider lane is located on the outside (right). This provides more space for large vehicles that usually occupy that lane, provides more space for bicycles, and allows drivers to keep their vehicles at a greater distance from the right edge. See **Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities**.

Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths

| Facility | | ADT (vpd) | Design Speed (mph) | Lane Width – (feet) | | |
|----------------------------|-------|-------------|--------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| | | | | Travel Lanes ¹ | Turn Lanes ⁶ (LT/RT/MD) | Passing Lanes |
| Freeway | Rural | All | All | 12 | -- | -- |
| | Urban | All | All | 12 | -- | -- |
| Arterial | Rural | All | All | 12 ⁸ | 12 ⁹ | 12 ⁹ |
| | Urban | All | ≥ 50 | 12 | 12 | 12 |
| | | All | ≤ 45 | 11 ^{3, 4} | 11 ^{3, 4, 7} | 11 ^{3, 4} |
| Collector | Rural | > 1500 | All | 12 ⁸ | 12 ⁸ | 12 ⁹ |
| | | 401 to 1500 | All | 11 ^{3, 4} | 11 ^{3, 4} | -- |
| | | ≤ 400 | ≥ 50 | 11 | 11 ⁷ | -- |
| | | | ≤ 45 | 10 | 10 | -- |
| | Urban | All | All | 11 ^{2, 3, 4} | 11 ^{2, 7} | -- |
| Local | Rural | > 1500 | All | 12 ⁸ | 12 ⁹ | 12 ⁹ |
| | | 401 to 1500 | All | 11 ^{3, 4} | 11 ^{3, 4} | -- |
| | | ≤ 400 | ≥ 55 | 11 ³ | 11 ^{3, 4} | -- |
| | | | 45 to 50 | 10 | 10 | -- |
| | | | ≤ 40 | 9 | 9 | -- |
| | Urban | All | All | 10 ^{2, 5} | 10 ⁸ | -- |
| See Footnotes on next page | | | | | | |

Footnotes

1. A minimum traveled way width equal to the width of two adjacent travel lanes (one way or two way) shall be provided on all rural facilities.
2. In industrial areas and where truck volumes are significant, 12' lanes should be provided, but may be reduced to 11' where right of way is constrained.
3. In constrained areas where truck volumes are low and speeds are < 35 mph, 10' lanes may be used.
4. On roadways with a transit route, a minimum of 11' outside lane width is required.
5. In residential areas where right of way is severely limited, 9' may be used.
6. Turn lane width in raised or grass medians shall not exceed 14'. Two-way left turn lanes should be 11 – 14' wide and may only be used on 3- and 5-lane typical sections with design speeds \leq 40 mph. On projects with right of way constraints, the minimum width may be reduced to 10'. Two-way left turn lanes shall include sections of raised or restrictive median for pedestrian refuge.
7. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 10' where right of way is constrained.
8. Turn Lane width should be same as Travel Lane width. May be reduced to 9' where truck volumes are low.
9. For design speeds below 50 mph, lane widths of 11 feet are acceptable.

C.7.b.2 Traveled Way Cross Slope (not in superelevation)

The selection of traveled way cross slope should be a compromise between meeting the drainage requirements and providing for smooth vehicle operation. The recommended traveled way cross slope is 0.02 feet per foot. When three lanes in each direction are necessary, the outside lane should have a cross slope of 0.03 feet per foot. The cross slope shall not be less than 0.015 feet per foot or greater than 0.04 feet per foot. The change in cross slope between adjacent through travel lanes should not exceed 0.04 feet per foot.

C.7.c Shoulders

The primary functions of a shoulder are to provide emergency parking for disabled vehicles and an alternate path for vehicles during avoidance or other emergency maneuvers. In order to fulfill these functions satisfactorily, the shoulder should have adequate stability and surface characteristics. The design and construction of shoulders shall be in accordance with the requirements given in ***Chapter 5 - Pavement Design and Construction***.

Shoulders should be provided on all streets and highways incorporating open drainage. The absence of a contiguous emergency travel or storage lane is not only undesirable from a safety standpoint, but also is disadvantageous from an operations viewpoint. Disabled vehicles that must stop in a through lane impose a severe safety hazard and produce a dramatic reduction in traffic flow. Shoulders should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining vehicle control.

Paved outside shoulders are required for rural high speed multilane highways and freeways. They provide added safety to the motorist, public transit and pedestrians, for accommodation of bicyclists, reduced shoulder maintenance costs, and improved drainage

C.7.c.1 Shoulder Width

A shoulder is the portion of the roadway contiguous with the traveled way that accommodates stopped vehicles, emergency use, and provides lateral support of subbase, base and surface courses. In some cases, the shoulder may also accommodate pedestrians or bicyclists. Shoulders may be surfaced either full or partial width and include turf, gravel, shell, and asphalt or concrete pavements.

The minimum width of outside and median shoulders is provided in Table 3 – 21 Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Highways. Shoulders for two-lane, two-way highways are based upon traffic volumes. Shoulder widths for multi-lane highways are based upon the number of travel lanes in each direction. Where bicyclists or pedestrians are to be accommodated on the shoulder, a minimum usable width of 4 feet is required (5 feet if adjacent to a barrier). On approaches to narrow bridges where the paved shoulder is reduced, the Department's *Standard Plans Index 700-106* provides information on signing and marking the approaching shoulder.

**Table 3 – 21 Minimum Shoulder Widths for
 Flush Shoulder Highways**

Two Lane Undivided

| Design Speed (mph) | Average Daily Traffic (2 – Way) | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|--------|
| | 0 - ≤400 | 401 - 750 | >750 - |
| All | 2 feet | 6 feet | 8 feet |

Multilane Divided

| Number of Lanes Each Direction | Shoulder Width (feet) | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|--------|----------|--------|
| | Outside | | Median | |
| | Roadway | Bridge | Roadway | Bridge |
| 2 | 8 (min.) | 8 | 4 (min.) | 4 |
| 3 or more | 10 (min.) | 10 | 6 (min.) | 6 |

C.7.c.2 Shoulder Cross Slope

The shoulder serves as a continuation of the drainage system; therefore, the shoulder cross slope should be somewhat greater than the adjacent traffic lane. The cross slope of shoulders should be within the range given in Table 3 – 22 Shoulder Cross Slope.

Table 3 – 22 Shoulder Cross Slope

| | Shoulder Type | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------|---------|
| | Paved | Gravel or Crushed Rock | Turf |
| Shoulder Cross Slope (Percent) | 2 to 6% | 4 to 6% | 6 to 8% |

Notes: 1. Existing shoulder cross slope (paved and unpaved) \leq 12% may remain.

Source – 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Section 4.4.3 Shoulder Cross Sections.

Whenever possible, shoulders should be sloped away from the traveled way to aid in their drainage. The combination of shoulder cross slope and texture should be sufficient to promote rapid drainage and to avoid retention of surface water. The maximum algebraic difference between the traveled way and adjacent shoulder should not be greater than 0.07 feet per foot. Shoulders on the outside of superelevated curves should be rounded (vertical curve) to avoid an excessive break in cross slope and to divert a portion of the drainage away from the adjacent traveled way.

C.7.d Sidewalks

The design of sidewalks is affected by many factors, including traffic characteristics, pedestrian volume, roadway type, and other design elements. **Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities** of this Manual and **A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (AASHTO, 2011)**, present the various factors that influence the design of sidewalks and other pedestrian facilities.

Sidewalks should be constructed in conjunction with new construction and major reconstruction in or within one mile of an urban area. As a general rule, sidewalks should be constructed on both sides of the roadway. Exceptions may be made where physical barriers (e.g., a canal paralleling one side of the roadway) would substantially reduce the expectation of pedestrian use of one side of the roadway. Also, if only one side is possible, sidewalks should be available on the same side of the road as transit stops or other pedestrian generators.

The decision to construct a sidewalk in a rural area should be based on engineering judgment, after observation of existing pedestrian traffic and expectation of additional demand, should a sidewalk be made available.

Sidewalks should be constructed as defined in this Manual. **Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities, Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing** and **Section C.10.a.3 – Sidewalks and Curb Ramps** of this chapter provide additional detailed information. **AASHTO's Guide for the Planning, Design and Operation of Pedestrian Facilities (2004)**, and **Section 4.17.1 Sidewalks** of **AASHTO's Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets (2011)** provide additional information.

The **Highway Capacity Manual, Volume 3, Chapter 23, Off-Street Pedestrian and Bicycle Facilities (2010)** includes further information on how optimal widths can be determined.

Curb ramps shall be provided at all intersections with curb (**Section 336.045 (3), Florida Statutes**). Each crossing should have separate curb ramps, perpendicular with the curb, and landing within the crosswalk.. In addition to the design criteria provided in this chapter, the **2006 Americans with Disabilities Act Standards for Transportation Facilities** as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43 and the **2012 Florida Accessibility Code for Building Construction** as required by 61G20-4.002 impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

C.7.e Medians

Median separation of opposing traffic lanes provides a beneficial safety feature and should be used wherever feasible. Separation of the opposing traffic also reduces the problem of headlight glare, thus improving safety and comfort for night driving. When sufficient width of medians is available, some landscaping is also possible.

The use of medians often aids in the provision of drainage for the roadway surface, particularly for highways with six or more traffic lanes. The median also provides a vehicle refuge area, improves the safety of pedestrian crossings, provides a logical location for left turn auxiliary lanes, and provides the means for future addition of traffic lanes and mass transit. In many situations, the median strip aids in roadway delineation and the overall highway aesthetics.

Median separation is required on the following streets and highways:

- Freeways
- All streets and highways, rural and urban, with 4 or more travel lanes and with a design speed of 40 mph or greater

Median separation is desirable on all other multi-lane roadways to enhance pedestrian crossings.

The nature and degree of median separation required is dependent upon the design speed, traffic volume, adjacent land use, and the frequency of access. There are basically two approaches to median separation. The first is the use of horizontal separation of opposing lanes to reduce the probability of vehicles crossing the median into incoming traffic. The second method is to attempt to limit crossovers by introducing a positive median barrier structure.

In rural areas, the use of wide medians is not only aesthetically pleasing, but is often more economical than barriers. In urban areas where space and/or economic constraints are severe, the use of barriers is permitted to fulfill the requirements for median separation.

Uncurbed medians should be free of abrupt changes in slope, discontinuities, soft ground, or other hazards that would prevent the driver from retaining or regaining control of the vehicle. Consideration should be given to increasing the width and decreasing the slope of medians on horizontal curves. The requirements for a hazard free median environment are given in **Chapter 4 - Roadside Design**, and shall be followed in the design and construction of medians.

C.7.e.1 Type of Median

A wide, gently depressed median is the preferred design. This type allows a reasonable vehicle recovery area and aids in the drainage of the adjacent shoulders and travel lanes. Where space and drainage limitations are severe, narrower medians, flush with the roadway, or raised medians, are permitted. Raised medians should be used to support pedestrian crossings of multi-laned streets and highways.

C.7.e.2 Median Width

The median width is defined as the horizontal distance between the inside (median) edge of travel lanes of the opposing roadways. The selection of the median width for a given type of street or highway is primarily dependent on design speed and traffic volume. Since the probability of crossover crashes is decreased by increasing the separation, medians should be as wide as practicable. Median widths in excess of 30 feet to 35 feet reduce the problem of disabling headlight glare from opposing traffic.

The minimum permitted widths of freeway medians are given in Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width. Where the expected traffic volume is heavy, the widths should be increased over these minimum values. Median barriers shall be used on freeways when these minimum values are not attainable.

The minimum permitted median widths for multi-lane rural highways are also given in Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width. On urban streets, the median widths shall not be less than the values given in Table 3 – 23. Where median openings or access points are frequent, the median width should be increased.

The minimum median widths given in these Tables may have to be increased to meet the requirements for cross slopes, drainage, and turning movements (C.9 Intersection Design, this chapter). The median area should also include adequate additional width to allow for expected additions of through lanes and left turn lanes. Where the median width is sufficient to produce essentially two separate, independent roadways, the left side of each roadway shall meet the requirements for roadside clear zone. Changes in the median width should be accomplished by gently flowing horizontal alignment of one or both of the separate roadways.

Table 3 – 23 Minimum Median Width

| Type of Facility | Width (feet) |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| Freeways | |
| Freeways, Without Barrier | --- |
| Design Speed \geq 60 mph | 60 |
| Design Speed $<$ 60 mph | 40 |
| All, With Barrier, All Design Speeds | 26 ¹ |
| Arterial and Collectors | |
| Design Speed \geq 50 mph | 40 |
| Design Speed \leq 45 mph | 22 ² |
| Paved and Painted for Left Turns | See Table 3 – 17 Minimum Lane Widths |
| <p>Median width is the distance between the inside (median) edge of the travel lane of each roadway.</p> <p>Footnotes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Based on 2 ft. wide, concrete median barrier and 12 ft. shoulder. On projects where right of way is constrained, the minimum width may be reduced to 19.5 ft. for design speeds = 45 mph, and to 15.5 ft. for design speeds \leq 40 mph. | |

C.7.e.3 Median Slopes

A vehicle should be able to traverse a median without turning over and with sufficient smoothness to allow the driver a reasonable chance to control the vehicle. The transition between the median slope and the shoulder (or pavement) slope should be smooth, gently rounded, and free from discontinuities.

The median cross slope should not be steeper than 1:6 (preferably not steeper than 1:10). The depth of depressed medians may be controlled by drainage requirements. Increasing the width of the median, rather than increasing the cross slope, is the proper method for developing the required median depth.

Longitudinal slopes (median profile parallel to the roadway) should be shallow and gently rounded at intersections of grade. The longitudinal slope, relative to the roadway slope, shall not exceed a ratio of 1:10 and preferably 1:20. The change in longitudinal slope shall not exceed 1:8 (change in grade of 12.5 %).

C.7.e.4 Median Barriers

See **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design** for criteria on median barriers. The **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide** provides additional information and guidelines on the use of median barriers.

C.7.f Islands

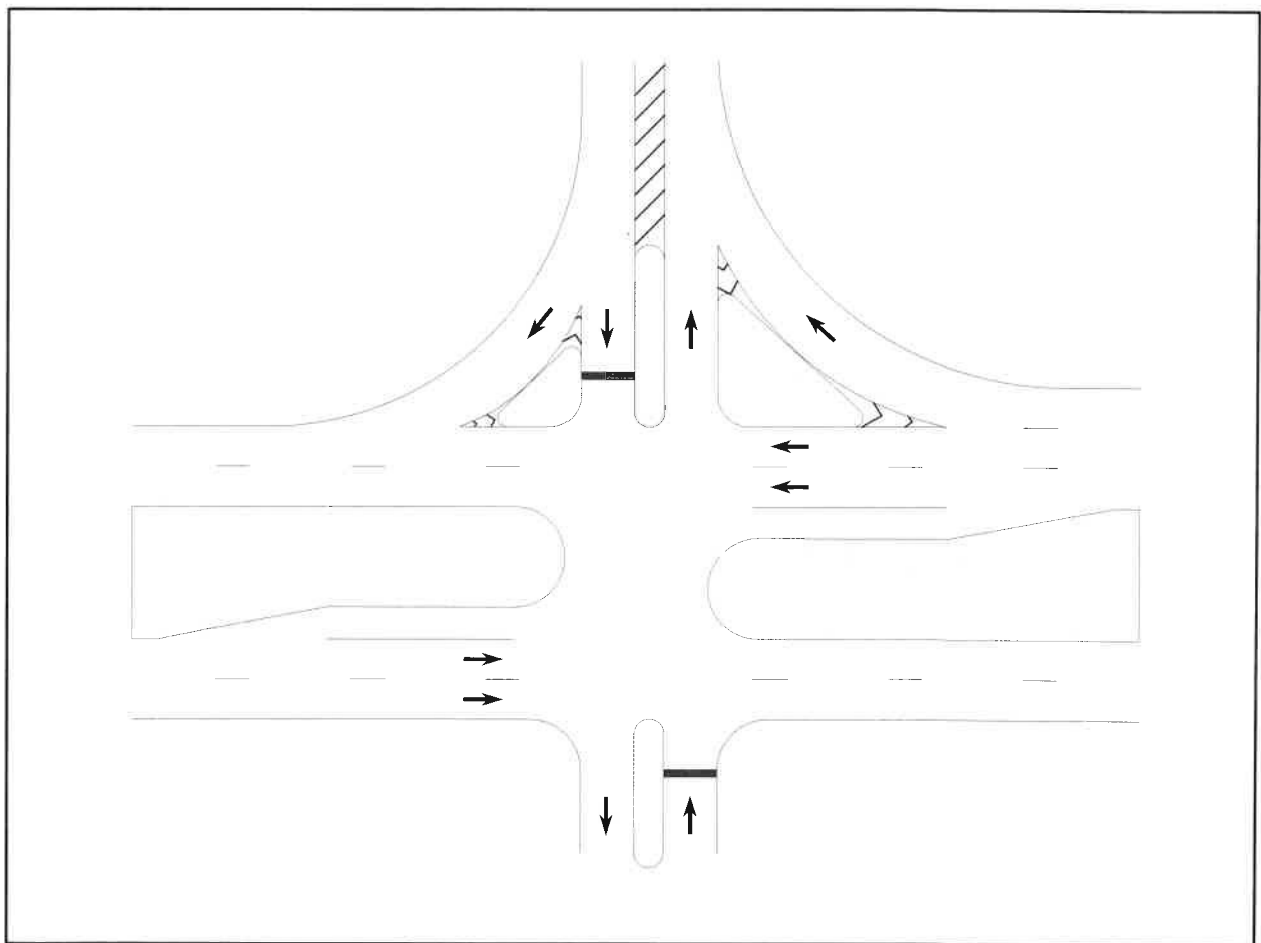
An island is a defined area between traffic lanes used for control of vehicle movements. Most islands combine two or more of these primary functions:

1. Channelization — To control and direct traffic movement, usually turning;
2. Division — To divide opposing or same direction traffic streams, usually through movements; and
3. Refuge — To provide refuge for pedestrians.

Islands generally are either elongated or triangular in shape and situated in areas unused for vehicle paths. Islands should be located and designed to offer little obstruction to vehicles and be commanding enough that motorists will not drive over them. The placement of mast arms in channelizing islands is discouraged. Mast arms are not permitted in median islands.

The dimensions and details depend on the intersection design as illustrated in Figure 3 – 5 General Types and Shapes of Islands and Medians. They should conform to the general principles that follow.

Figure 3 – 5 General Types and Shapes of Islands and Medians



Curbed islands are sometimes difficult to see at night. Where curbed islands are used, the intersection should have fixed-source lighting or appropriate delineation. Under certain conditions, painted, flush medians and islands or traversable type medians may be preferable to the raised curb type islands. These conditions include the following:

- Lightly developed areas that will not be considered for access management;
- Intersections where approach speeds are relatively high;
- Areas where there is little pedestrian traffic;
- Areas where fixed-source lighting is not provided;
- Median or corner islands where signals, signs, or luminaire supports are not needed; and
- Areas where extensive development exists and may demand left-turn lanes into many entrances.

Painted islands may be used at the traveled way edge. At some intersections, both curbed and painted islands may be desirable. All pavement markings should be reflectorized. The use of thermoplastic striping, raised dots, spaced and raised retroreflective markers, and other forms of long-life markings also may be desirable. See **Section 9.6.3** of the **2011 AASHTO Greenbook** and the **MUTCD, Part 3** for additional information on the design and marking of islands.

The central area of large channelizing islands in most cases has a turf or other vegetative cover. As space and the overall character of the highway determine, low plant material may be included, but it should not obstruct sight distance. Ground cover or plant growth, such as turf, vines, and shrubs, can be used for channelizing islands and provides excellent contrast with the paved areas, assuming the ground cover is cost-effective and can be properly maintained. The Department's **Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections** provides additional information on designing landscaping in medians or at intersections.

Small curbed islands may be mounded, but where pavement cross slopes are outward, large islands should be depressed to avoid draining water across the pavement. For small curbed islands and in areas where growing conditions are not favorable, some type of paved surface may be used on the island.

Careful consideration should be given to the location and type of plantings. Plantings, particularly in narrow islands, may create problems for maintenance activities. Plantings and other landscaping features in channelization areas may constitute roadside obstacles and should be consistent with the requirements in Section C.9.b Sight Distance. The **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide (2011)** provides additional information on landscaping of islands.

C.7.f.1 Channelizing Islands

Channelizing islands may be of many shapes and sizes, depending on the conditions and dimensions of the intersection. A common form is the corner triangular shape that separates right-turning traffic from through traffic. Central islands may serve as a guide around which turning vehicles operate.

Channelizing islands should be placed so that the proper course of travel is immediately obvious, easy to follow, and of unquestionable continuity. Where islands separate turning traffic from through traffic, the radii of curved portions should equal or exceed the minimum for the turning speeds expected. Curbed islands generally should not be used in rural areas and at isolated locations unless the intersection is lighted and curbs are delineated.

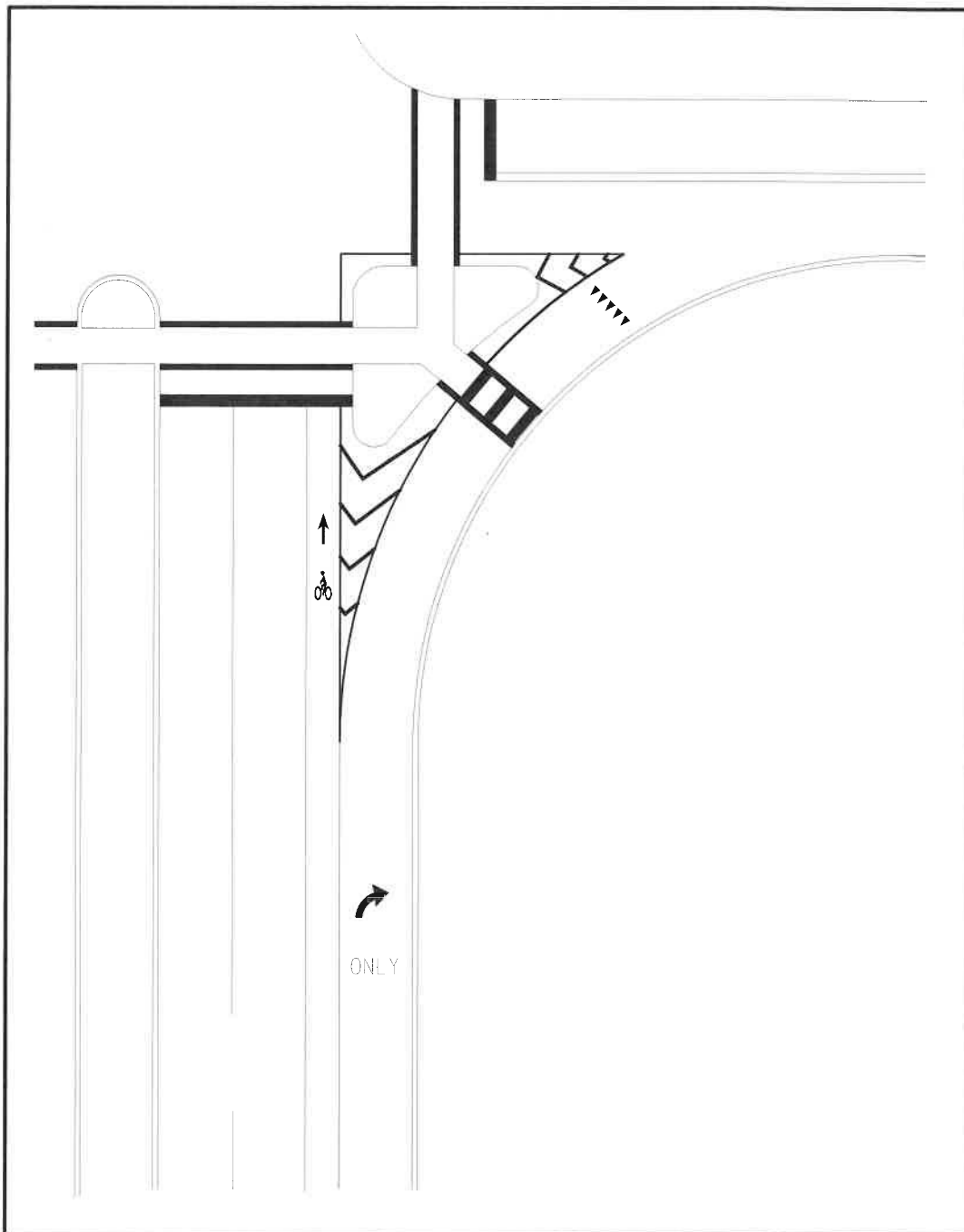
Islands should be sufficiently large to command attention, with 100 ft² preferred. The smallest curbed corner island should have an area of at least 50 ft² for urban and 75 ft² for rural intersections. A corner triangular island should be at least 15 feet on a side (12 ft. minimum) after the rounding of corners.

While mast arms are discouraged in channelizing islands, when they are used the minimum lateral offset as shown in Chapter 4, Roadside Design Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset shall be provided. Mast arm foundation diameters vary from 3.5 feet to 5.0 feet. The minimum lateral offset for 45 mph and less should be based on minimum offset to a hazard from curb face – 4 feet standard, 1.5 feet absolute minimum.

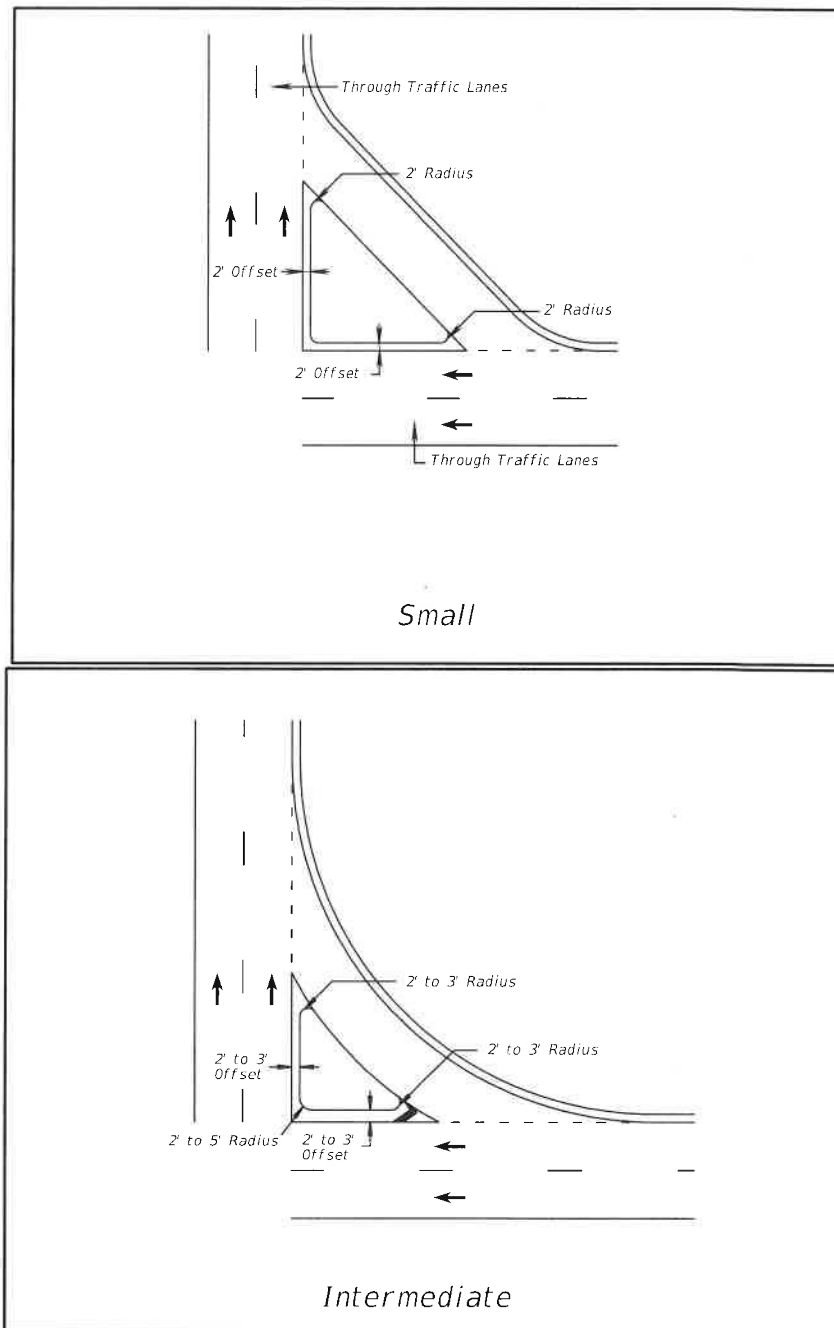
Details of curbed corner island designs used in conjunction with turning roadways are shown in Figures 3 – 6 Channelization Island for Pedestrian Crossings (Curbed), 3 – 7 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Curbed) and 3 – 8 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways (Flush Shoulder). The approach corner of each curbed island is designed with an approach nose treatment.

Further information on the pavement markings that can be used with islands can be found in the Department's *Standard Plans, Index 711-001*.

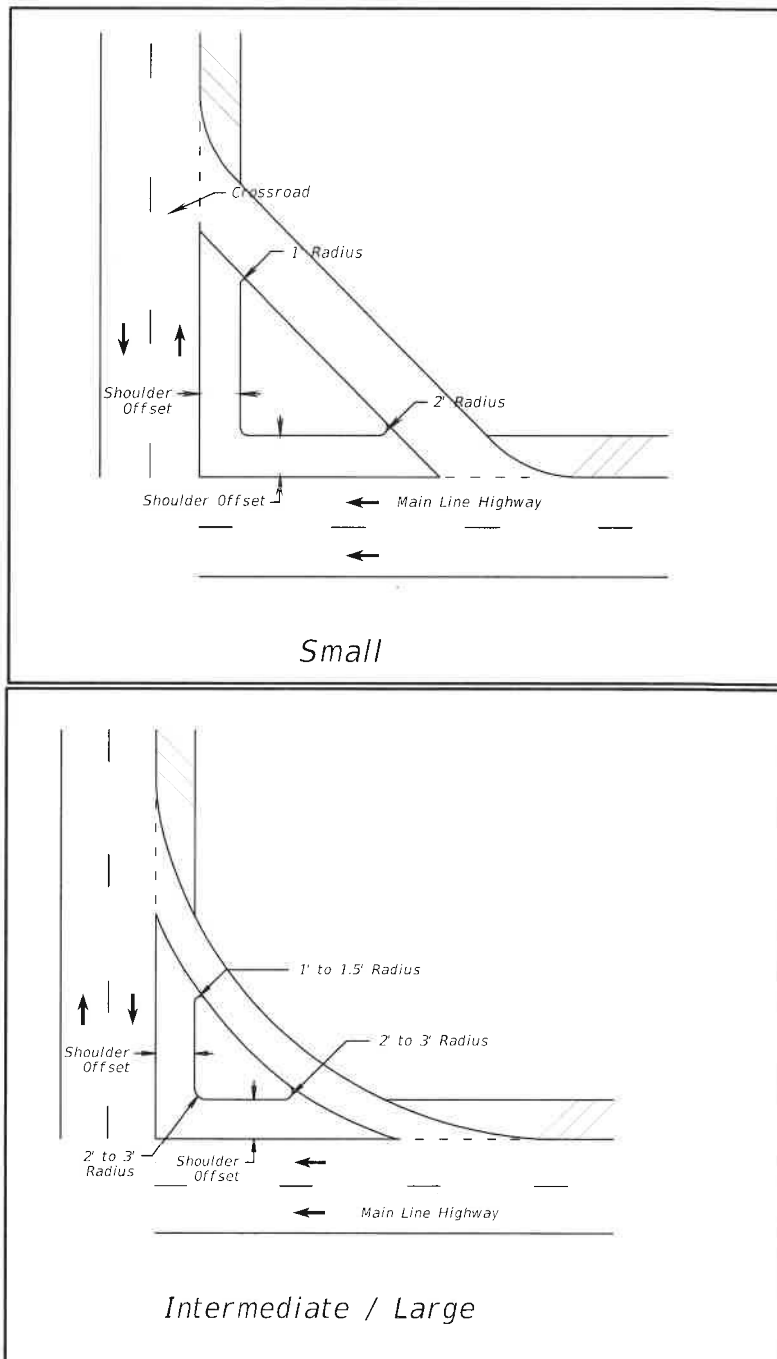
**Figure 3 – 6 Channelization Island for Pedestrian Crossings
(Curbed)**



**Figure 3 – 7 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways
(Curbed)**



**Figure 3 – 8 Details of Corner Island for Turning Roadways
(Flush Shoulder)**



C.7.f.2 Divisional Islands

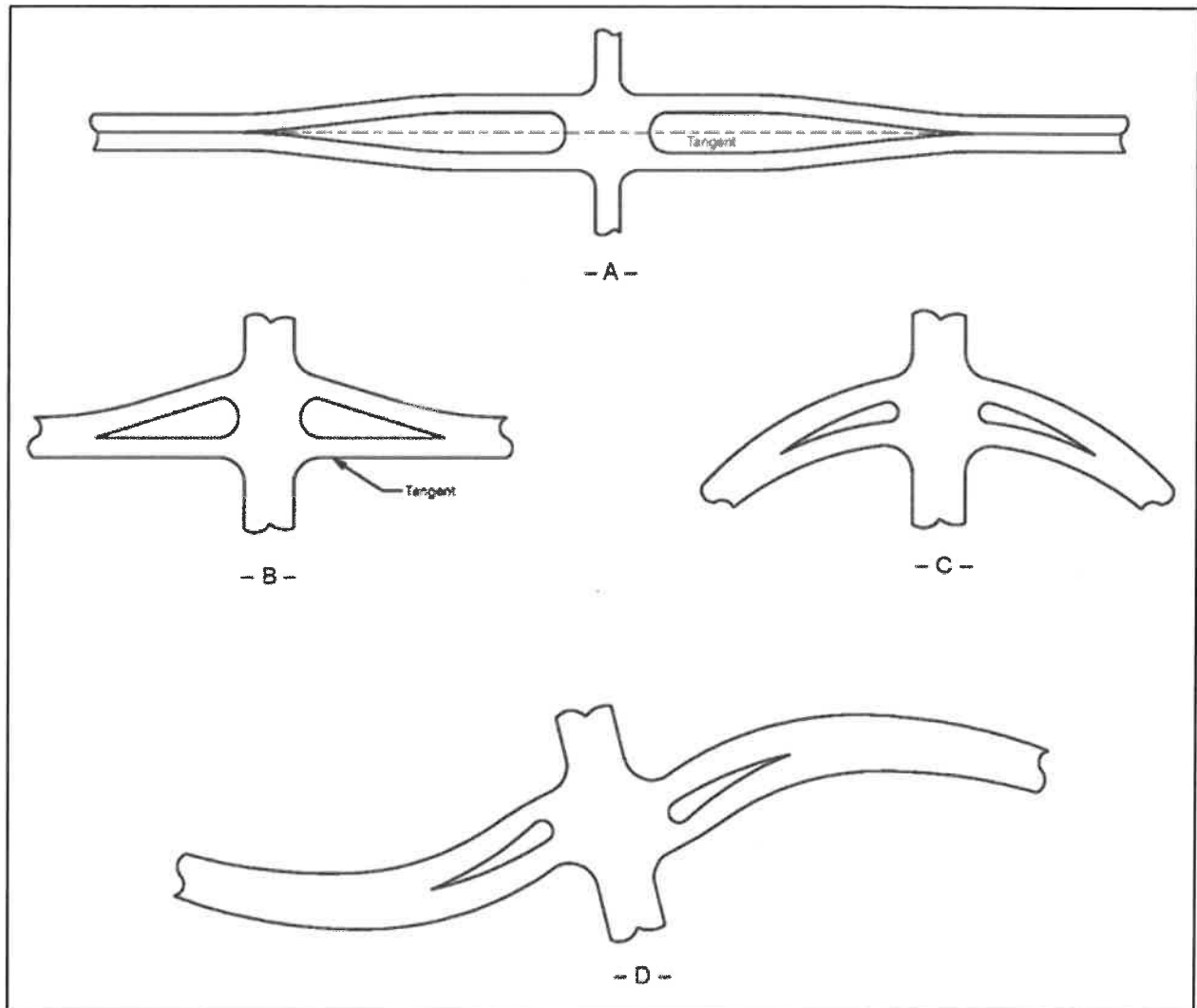
Divisional islands often are introduced on undivided highways at intersections. They alert drivers to the crossroad ahead and regulate traffic through the intersection. These islands are particularly advantageous in controlling left turns at skewed intersections and at locations where separate roadways are provided for right-turning traffic.

Widening a roadway to include a divisional island should be done in such a manner that the proper paths to follow are unmistakably evident to drivers. The alignment should require no appreciable conscious effort in vehicle steering.

Elongated or divisional islands should be not less than 4 feet wide and 20 to 25 feet long. In general, introducing curbed divisional islands at isolated intersections on high-speed highways is undesirable unless special attention is directed to providing high visibility for the islands. Curbed divisional islands introduced at isolated intersections on high-speed highways should be 100 feet or more in length. When situated in the vicinity of a high point in the roadway profile or at or near the beginning of a horizontal curve, the approach end of the curbed island should be extended to be clearly visible to approaching drivers.

Where an island is introduced at an intersection to separate opposing traffic on a four-lane road or on a major two-lane highway carrying high volumes, two full lanes should be provided on each side of the dividing island (particularly where future conversion to a wider highway is likely). In other instances, narrower roadways may be used. For moderate volumes, roadway widths shown under Case II (one-lane, one-way operation with provision for passing a stalled vehicle) in [Table 3 - 34 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles](#) are appropriate. For light volumes and where small islands are needed, widths on each side of the island corresponding to Case I in [Table 3 - 34](#) may be used.

Figure 3 – 9 Alignment for Divisional Islands at Intersections



C.7.f.3 Refuge Islands

A refuge island for pedestrians at or near a crosswalk or shared use path crossing aids pedestrians and bicyclists who cross the roadway. Raised-curb corner islands and center channelizing or divisional islands can be used as refuge areas. Refuge islands for pedestrians and bicyclists crossing a wide street, for loading or unloading transit riders, or for wheelchair ramps are used primarily in urban areas. Figure 3 – 10 Pedestrian Refuge Island, Figure 3 – 11 Pedestrian

Crossing with Refuge Island (Yield Condition), and Figure 3 – 12 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Stop Condition) show divisional islands that support a midblock crosswalk with stop and yield conditions. The distance A shown in the figures is based upon the *MUTCD*, and shown following the figures.

The location and width of crosswalks, the location and size of transit loading zones, and the provision of curb ramps influence the size and location of refuge islands. Refuge islands should be a minimum of 6 feet wide. Pedestrians and bicyclists should have a clear path through the island and should not be obstructed by poles, sign posts, utility boxes, etc. Sidewalk and shared use path curb ramps in islands shall meet the requirements found in **Section C.10.a.4** of this chapter and **Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities**. Curb ramps that are part of a shared use path shall also meet the requirements of **Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities**.

Figure 3 – 10 Pedestrian Refuge Island



North Main Street, Gainesville, FL

Figure 3 – 11 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Yield Condition)

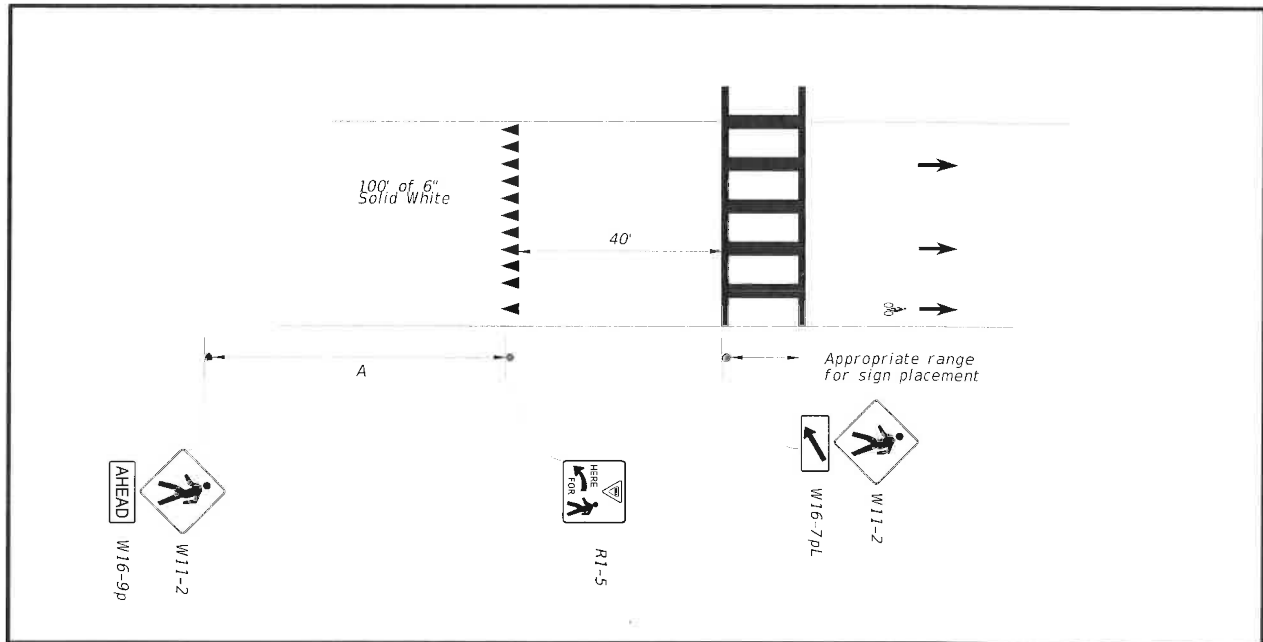
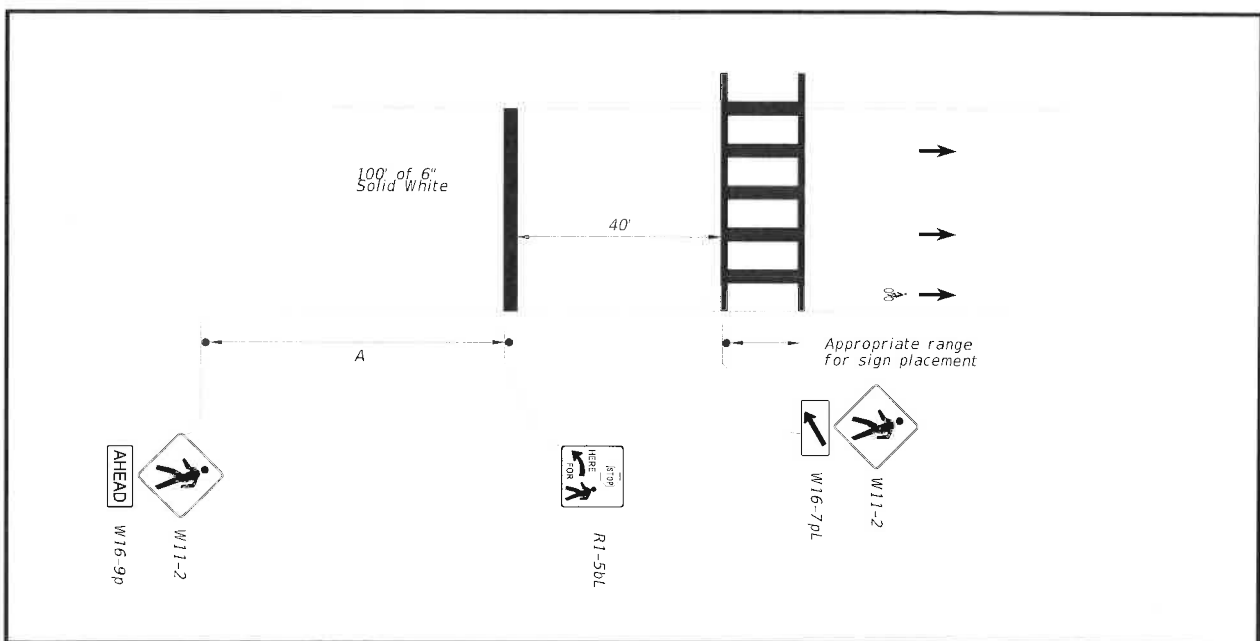


Figure 3 – 12 Pedestrian Crossing with Refuge Island (Stop Condition)



Note: 1. See following page for distance A.

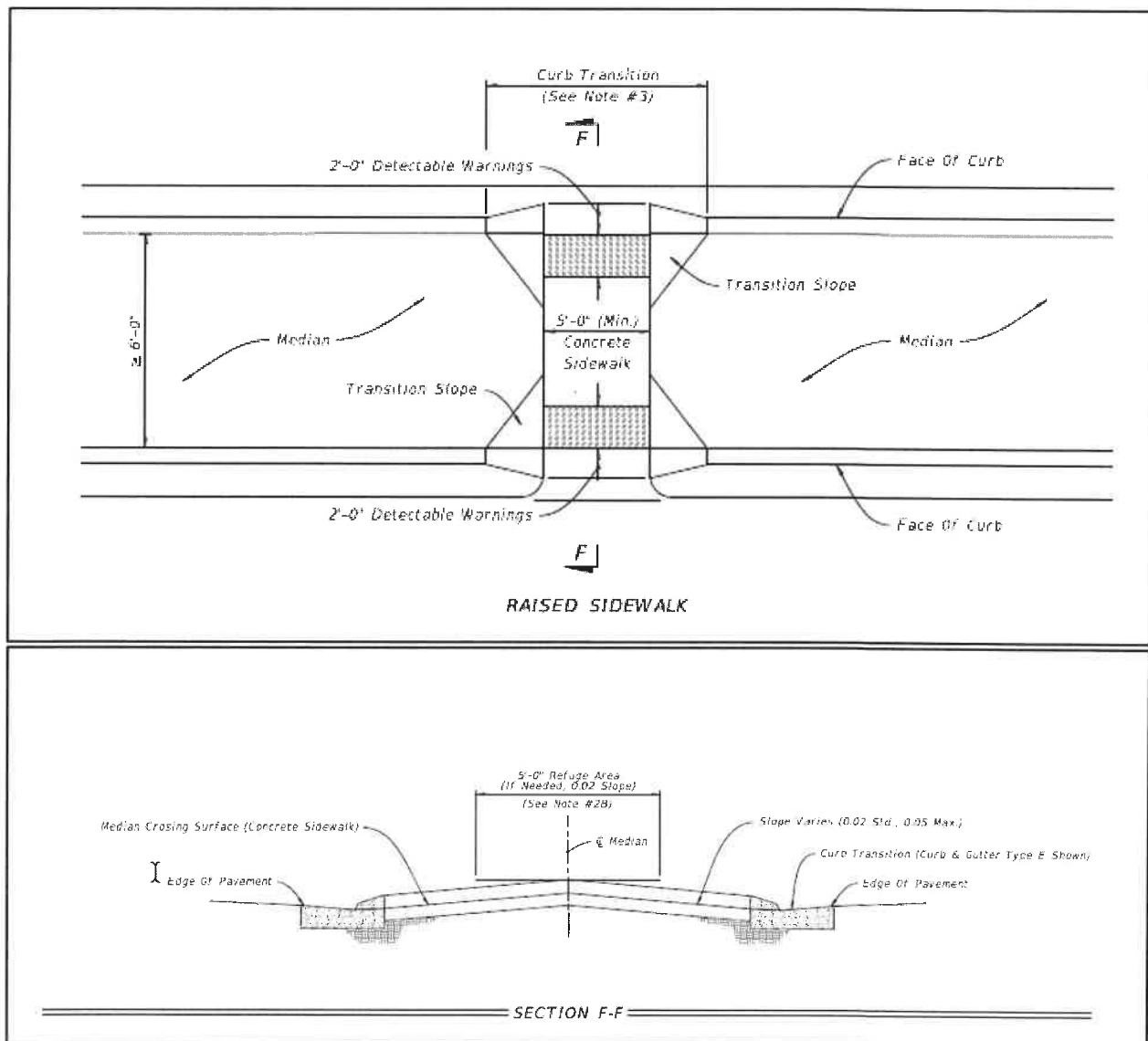
The distance A shown in Figures 3 – 11 and 3 – 12 for the advance warning sign should be:

| Posted Speed (mph) | Advance Placement Distance (feet) |
|---------------------------|--|
| 25 or Less | 100 |
| 26 to 35 | 100 |
| 36 to 45 | 175 |

Source: 2009 MUTCD, with 2012 Revisions, Table 2C-4. Guidelines for Advance Placement of Warning Signs. Typical condition is the warning of a potential stop condition.

An example of a pedestrian crossing through a refuge island is shown in Figure 3 – 13 Pedestrian Crossing in Refuge Island. Other options are shown in the Department's **Standard Plans 522-002 Detectable Warnings and Sidewalk Curb Ramps**.

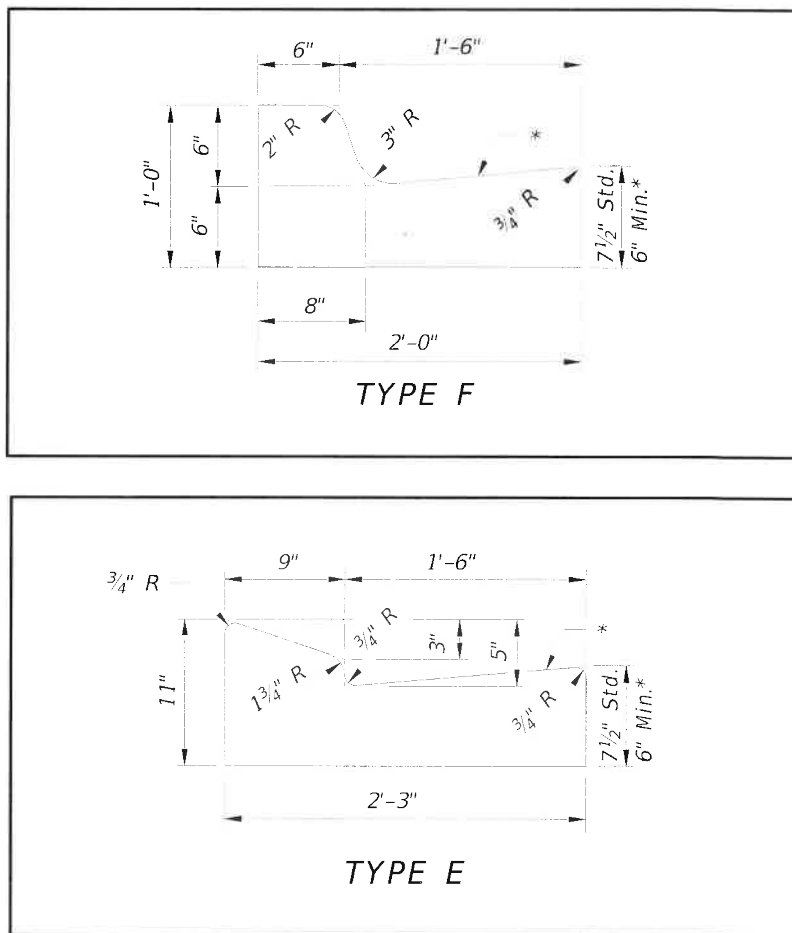
Figure 3 – 13 Pedestrian Crossing in Refuge Island



C.7.g Curbs

Curbs may be used to provide drainage control and to improve delineation of the roadway. Curbs are generally designed with a gutter to form a combination curb and gutter section. In Florida, the standard curb of this type is 6 inches in height. See Figure 3 – 14 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs for examples of sloping curbs. These curbs are not to be used on facilities with design speeds greater than 45 mph. See **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design** for additional design criteria on the use of curbs.

Figure 3 – 14 Standard Detail for FDOT Type F and E Curbs



C.7.h Parking

When on-street parking is to be an element of design, parallel parking should be considered. Under certain circumstances, angle parking is an allowable form of street parking. The type of on-street parking selected should depend on the specific function and width of the street, the adjacent land use, traffic volume, as well as existing and anticipated traffic operations. On-street parking is allowed on facilities with posted speeds of 35 mph or less.

It can generally be stated that on-street parking decreases through capacity, impedes traffic flow, and increases crash potential. However, where parking is needed, and adequate off-street parking facilities are not available or feasible, on-street parking may be necessary.

C.7.i Right of Way

The acquisition of sufficient right of way is necessary in order to provide space for a safe street or highway. The width of the right of way required depends on the design of the roadway, the arrangement of bridges, underpasses and other structures, and the need for cuts or fills. The right of way acquired should be sufficient to:

- Allow development of the full cross section, including adequate medians and roadside clear zones. Determination of the necessary width requires that adequate consideration also be given to the accommodation of utility poles beyond the clear zone.
- Allow the layout of safe intersections, interchanges, and other access points.
- Allow adequate sight distance at all points, particularly on horizontal curves, at an intersection, and other access points.
- Allow, where appropriate, additional buffer zones to improve roadside safety, noise attenuation, and the overall aesthetics of the street or highway.
- Allow adequate space for placement of pedestrian and bicycle facilities, including curb ramps, bus bays, and transit shelters, where applicable.

- Allow for future lane additions, increases in cross section, or other improvement. Frontage roads should also be considered in the ultimate development of many high volume facilities.
- Allow treatment of stormwater runoff.
- Allow for construction of future intersection improvements, such as turn lanes, bicycle and pedestrian facilities or over and underpasses.
- Allow corner cuts for upstream corner crossing drainage systems and placement of poles, boxes, and other visual screens out of the critical sight triangle.
- Allow landscaping and irrigation as required for the project.

The acquisition of wide rights of way is costly, but it may be necessary to allow the construction and future improvement of safe streets and highways. The minimum right of way should be at least 50 feet for all two-lane roads. For pre-existing conditions, when the existing right of way is less than 50 feet, efforts should be made to acquire the necessary right of way.

Local cul-de-sac and dead end streets having an ADT of less than or equal to 400 and a length of 600 feet or less, may utilize a right of way of less than 50 feet, if all elements of the typical section meet the standards included in this Manual.

The right of way for frontage roads may be reduced depending on the typical section requirements and the ability to share right of way with the adjacent street or highway facility.

C.7.j Changes in Typical Section

C.7.j.1 General Criteria

Changes in cross section should be avoided. When changes in widths, slopes, or other elements are necessary, they should be affected in a smooth, gradual fashion.

C.7.j.2 Lane Deletions and Additions

The addition or deletion of traffic or bicycle lanes should be undertaken on tangent sections of roadways. The approach to lane deletions and additions should have ample advance warning and sight distance.

The termination of lanes (including auxiliary lanes) shall meet the general requirements for merging lanes. See Section C.9.c.1 for additional information.

Where additional lanes are intermittently provided on two-lane, two-way highways, median separation should be considered.

C.7.j.3 Preferential Lanes

To increase the efficiency and separation of different vehicle movements, preferential use lanes, such as bike lanes and bus lanes, should be considered. These lanes are often an enhancement to corridor safety and increase the horizontal clearance to roadside aboveground fixed objects. The *MUTCD, Chapter 3D* provides further information on preferential lane markings. See **Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities** for information on marking bicycle lanes.

C.7.j.4 Structures

The pavement, median, and shoulder width, and sidewalks should be carried across structures such as bridges and box culverts. Shoulder widths for multi-lane rural divided highway bridges may be reduced as shown in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Shoulder Widths for Flush Shoulder Rural Highways. The designer should evaluate the economic practicality of utilizing dual versus single bridges for roadway sections incorporating wide medians.

The minimum roadway width for bridges on urban streets with curb and gutter shall be the same as the curb-to-curb width of the approach roadway. Sidewalks on the approaches should be carried across all structures. Curbed sidewalks should not be used adjacent to traffic lanes when design speeds exceed 45 mph. When the bridge rail (barrier wall) is placed between the traffic and sidewalk, it should be offset a minimum distance of 2½ feet from the edge of the travel lane, wide curb lane or bicycle lane. For long (500 feet or greater), and/or high level bridges, it is desirable to provide an offset distance that will accommodate a disabled vehicle. The transition from the bridge to the adjacent roadway section may be made by dropping the curb at the first intersection or well in advance of the traffic barrier, or reducing the curb in front of the barrier to a low sloping curb with a gently sloped traffic face. See **Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures** for additional requirements.

C.7.j.4.(a) Lateral Offset

Supports for bridges, barriers, or other structures should be placed at or beyond the required shoulder. Where possible, these structures should be located outside of the required clear zone. See **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design** for additional information on lateral offsets for structures.

C.7.j.4.(b) Vertical Clearance

Vertical clearance should be adequate for the type of expected traffic. Freeways and arterials shall have a vertical clearance of at least 16 feet-6 inches (includes 6 inch allowance for future resurfacing). Other streets and highways should have a clearance of 16 feet unless the provision of a reduced clearance is fully justified by a specific analysis of the situation (14 feet minimum). The minimum vertical clearance for a pedestrian or shared use bridge over a roadway is 17 feet. The minimum vertical clearance for a bridge over a railroad is 23 feet; however additional clearance may be required by the rail owner.

C.7.j.4.(c) End Treatment

The termini of guardrails, bridge railings, abutments, and other structures should be constructed to protect vehicles and their occupants from serious impact. Requirements for end treatment of structures are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.8 Access Control

All new facilities (and existing when possible) should have some degree of access control, since each point of access produces a traffic conflict. The control of access is one of the most effective, efficient, and economical methods for improving the capacity and safety characteristics of streets and highways. The reduction of the frequency of access points and the restriction of turning and crossing maneuvers, which should be primary objectives, is accomplished more effectively by the design of the roadway geometry than by the use of traffic control devices. Design criteria for access points are presented under the general requirements for intersection design.

Additional information on access management can be found in ***Rule Chapter 14-97 State Highway System Access Control Classification System, Florida Administrative Code***. The ***Department's Driveway Information Guide (2008)*** and ***Median Handbook (2014)*** provide further information on designing roadways and connections to support access management.

C.8.a Justification

The justification for control of access should be based on several factors, including safety, capacity, economics, and aesthetics.

C.8.b General Criteria

C.8.b.1 Location of Access Points

All access locations should have adequate sight distance available for the safe execution of entrance, exit, and crossing maneuvers.

Locations of access points near structures, decision points, or the termination of street or highway lighting should be avoided.

Driveways should not be placed within the influence zone of intersections or other points that would tend to produce traffic conflict.

C.8.b.2 Spacing of Access Points

The spacing of access points should be adequate to prevent conflict or mutual interference of traffic flow.

Separation of entrance and exit ramps should be sufficient to provide adequate distance for required weaving maneuvers.

Adequate spacing between access and decision points is necessary to avoid burdening the driver with the need for rapid decisions or maneuvers.

Frequent median openings should be avoided.

The use of a frontage road or other auxiliary roadways is recommended on arterials and higher classifications where the need for direct driveway or minor road access is frequent.

C.8.b.3 Restrictions of Maneuvers

Where feasible, the number and type of permitted maneuvers (crossing, turning slowing, etc.) should be restricted.

The restriction of crossing maneuvers may be accomplished by the use of grade separations and continuous raised medians.

The restriction of left turns is achieved most effectively by continuous medians.

Channelization should be considered for the purposes of guiding traffic flow and reducing vehicle conflicts.

C.8.b.4 Auxiliary Lanes

Deceleration lanes for right turn exits (and left turns, where permitted) should be provided on all high-speed facilities. These turn lanes should not be excessive or continuous, since they complicate pedestrian crossings and bicycle/motor vehicle movements.

Storage (or deceleration lanes) to protect turning vehicles should be provided, particularly where turning volumes are significant.

Special consideration should be given to the provisions for deceleration, acceleration, and storage lanes in commercial or industrial areas with significant truck/bus traffic.

C.8.b.5 Grade Separation

Grade separation interchange design should be considered for junctions of high volume arterial streets and highways.

Grade separation (or an interchange) should be utilized when the expected traffic volume exceeds the intersection capacity.

Grade separation should be considered to eliminate conflict or long waiting periods at potentially hazardous intersections.

C.8.b.6 Roundabouts

Roundabouts have proven safety and operational characteristics and should be evaluated as an alternative to conventional intersections whenever practical. Modern roundabouts, when correctly designed, are a proven safety countermeasure to conventional intersections, both stop controlled and signalized. In addition, when constructed in appropriate locations, drivers will experience less delay with modern roundabouts. *NCHRP Report 672 Roundabouts: An Informational Guide*, is adopted by FHWA and establishes criteria and procedures for the justification, operational and safety analysis of modern roundabouts in the United States. The modern roundabout is characterized by the following:

- A central island of sufficient diameter to accommodate vehicle tracking and to provide sufficient deflection to promote lower speeds
- Entry is by gap acceptance through a yield condition at all legs
- Speeds through the intersection of 20 - 25 mph.
- Single or multilane configurations.

Roundabouts should be considered under the following conditions:

1. New construction
2. Reconstruction
3. Traffic Operations improvements
4. Resurfacing (3R) with Right of Way acquisition
5. Need to reduce frequency and severity of crashes

C.8.c Control for All Limited Access Highways

Entrances and exits on the right side only are highly desirable for all limited access highways. Acceleration and deceleration lanes are mandatory. Intersections shall be accomplished by grade separation (interchange) and should be restricted to connect with arterials or collector roads.

The control of access on freeways should conform to the requirements given in Table 3 – 24 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways. The spacing of exits and entrances should be increased wherever possible to reduce conflicts. Safety and capacity characteristics are improved by restricting the number and increasing the spacing of access points.

Table 3 – 24 Access Control for All Limited Access Highways

| | Urban | Rural |
|------------------------------|--|---------------|
| Minimum Spacing | | |
| Interchanges | 1 to 3 miles | 3 to 25 miles |
| Maneuver Restrictions | | |
| Crossing Maneuvers | Via Grade Separation Only | |
| Exit and Entrance | From Right Side Only | |
| Turn Lane Required | Acceleration Lane at all Entrances Deceleration Lane at all Exits | |

C.8.d Control of Urban and Rural Streets and Highways

The design and construction of urban, as well as rural, highways should be governed by the general criteria for access control previously outlined. In addition, the design of urban streets should be in accordance with the criteria listed below:

- The general layout of local and collector streets should follow a branching network, rather than a highly interconnected grid pattern.
- The street network should be designed to reduce, consistent with origin/destination requirements, the number of crossing and left turn maneuvers.
- The design of the street layout should be predicated upon reducing the need for traffic signals.
- The use of a public street or highway as an integral part of the internal circulation pattern for commercial property should be discouraged.
- The number of driveway access points should be restricted as much as possible through areas of strip development.

- Special consideration should be given to providing turn lanes (auxiliary lane for turning maneuvers) where the total volume or truck/bus volume is high.
- Major traffic generators may be exempt from the restrictions on driveway access if the access point is designed as a normal intersection adequate to handle the expected traffic volume.

These are minimum requirements only; it is generally desirable to use more stringent criteria for control of access.

The design of rural highways should be in accordance with the general criteria for access control for urban streets. The use of acceleration and deceleration lanes on all high-speed highways, particularly if truck and bus traffic is significant, is strongly recommended.

C.8.e Land Development

It should be the policy of each agency with responsibility for street and highway design, construction, or maintenance to promote close liaison with utility, lawmaking, zoning, building, and planning agencies. Cooperation should be solicited in the formulation of laws, regulations, and master plans for land use, zoning, and road construction. Further requirements and criteria for access control and land use relationships are given in **Chapter 2 - Land Development**.

C.9 Intersection Design

Intersections increase traffic conflicts and the demands on the driver, and are inherently hazardous locations. The design of an intersection should be predicated on reducing motor vehicle, bicycle, and pedestrian conflicts, minimizing the confusion and demands on the driver for rapid and/or complex decisions, and providing for smooth traffic flow. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in Section C.8 Access Control, this chapter. Intersections should be designed to minimize time and distance of all who pass through or turn at an intersection.

The additional effort and expense required to provide a high quality intersection is justified by the corresponding safety benefits. The overall reduction in crash potential derived from a given expenditure for intersection improvements is generally much greater than the same expenditure for improvements along an open roadway. Properly designed intersections increase capacity, reduce delays, and improve safety.

One of the most common deficiencies that may be easy to correct is lack of adequate left turn storage.

The requirements and design criteria contained in this section are applicable to all driveways, intersections, and interchanges. All entrances to, exits from, or interconnections between streets and highways are subject to these design standards.

C.9.a General Criteria

The layout of a given intersection may be influenced by constraints unique to a particular location or situation. The design shall conform to sound principles and criteria for safe intersections. The general criteria include the following:

- The layout of the intersection should be as simple as is practicable. Complex intersections, which tend to confuse and distract the driver, produce inefficient and hazardous operations.
- The intersection arrangement should not require the driver to make rapid or complex decisions.

- The layout of the intersection should be clear and understandable so a proliferation of signs, signals, or markings is not required to adequately inform and direct the driver.
- The design of intersections, particularly along a given street or highway, should be as consistent as possible.
- The approach roadways should be free from steep grades and sharp horizontal or vertical curves.
- Intersections with driveways or other roadways should be as close to right angle as possible.
- Adequate sight distance should be provided to present the driver a clear view of the intersection and to allow for safe execution of crossing and turning maneuvers.
- The design of all intersection elements should be consistent with the design speeds of the approach roadways.
- The intersection layout and channelization should encourage smooth flow and discourage wrong way movements.
- Special attention should be directed toward the provision of safe roadside clear zones.
- The provision of auxiliary lanes should be in conformance with the criteria set forth in Section C.8 Access Control, this chapter.
- The requirements for bicycle and pedestrian movements should receive special consideration.

C.9.b Sight Distance

Inadequate sight distance is a contributing factor in the cause of a large percentage of intersection crashes. The provision of adequate sight distance at intersections is absolutely essential and should receive a high priority in the design process.

C.9.b.1 General Criteria

General criteria to be followed in the provision of sight distance include the following:

- Sight distance exceeding the minimum stopping sight distance should be provided on the approach to all intersections (entrances, exits, stop signs, traffic signals, and intersecting roadways). The use of proper approach geometry free from sharp horizontal and vertical curvature will normally allow for adequate sight distance.
- The approaches to exits or intersections (including turn, storage, and deceleration lanes) should have adequate sight distance for the design speed and also to accommodate any allowed lane change maneuvers.
- Adequate sight distance should be provided on the through roadway approach to entrances (from acceleration or merge lanes, stop or yield signs, driveways or traffic signals) to provide capabilities for defensive driving. This lateral sight distance should include as much length of the entering lane or intersecting roadway as is feasible. A clear view of entering vehicles is necessary to allow through traffic to aid merging maneuvers and to avoid vehicles that have "run" or appear to have the intention of running stop signs or traffic signals.
- Approaches to school or pedestrian crossings and crosswalks should have sight distances exceeding the minimum values. This should also include a clear view of the adjacent pedestrian pathways or shared use paths.
- Sight distance in both directions should be provided for all entering roadways (intersecting roadways and driveways) to allow entering vehicles to avoid through traffic. See Section C.9.B.4 for further information.
- Safe stopping sight distances shall be provided throughout all intersections, including turn lanes, speed change lanes, and turning roadways.
- The use of lighting (**Chapter 6 – Lighting**) should be considered to improve intersection sight distance for night driving.

C.9.b.2 Obstructions to Sight Distance

The provisions for sight distance are limited by the street or highway geometry and the nature and development of the area adjacent to the roadway. Where line of sight is limited by vertical curvature or obstructions, stopping sight distance shall be based on the eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 2.0 feet. At exits or other locations where the driver may be uncertain as to the roadway alignment, a clear view of the pavement surface should be provided. At locations requiring a clear view of other vehicles or pedestrians for the safe execution of crossing or entrance maneuvers, the sight distance should be based on a driver's eye height of 3.50 feet and an object height of 3.00 feet (preferably 1.50 feet). The height of eye for truck traffic may be increased for determination of line of sight obstructions for intersection maneuvers. Obstructions to sight distance at intersections include the following:

- Any property not under the highway agency's jurisdiction, through direct ownership or other regulations, should be considered as an area of potential sight distance obstruction. Based on the degree of obstruction, the property should be considered for acquisition by deed or easement.
- Areas which contain vegetation (trees, shrubbery, grass, etc.) that cannot easily be trimmed or removed by regular maintenance activity should be considered as sight obstructions.
- Parking lanes shall be considered as obstructions to line of sight. Parking shall be prohibited within clear areas required for sight distance at intersections.
- Large (or numerous) poles or support structures for lighting, signs, signals, or other purposes that significantly reduce the field of vision within the limits of clear sight shown in Figure 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle in Section C.9.b.4. may constitute sight obstructions. Potential sight obstructions created by poles, supports, and signs near intersections should be carefully investigated.

In order to ensure the provision for adequate intersection sight distance, on-site inspections should be conducted before and after construction, including placement of signs, lighting, guardrails, or other objects and how they impact intersection sight distance.

C.9.b.3 Stopping Sight Distance

The provision for safe stopping sight distance at intersections and on turning roadways is even more critical than on open roadways. Vehicles are more likely to be traveling in excess of the design or posted speed and drivers are frequently distracted from maintaining a continuous view of the upcoming roadway.

C.9.b.3.(a) Approach to Stops

The approach to stop signs, yield signs, or traffic signals should be provided with a sight distance no less than values given in Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values). These values are applicable for any street, highway, or turning roadway. The driver should, at this required distance, have a clear view of the intersecting roadway, as well as the sign or traffic signal.

Where the approach roadway is on a grade or vertical curve, the sight distance should be no less than the values shown in Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades. In any situation where it is feasible, sight distances exceeding those should be provided. This is desirable to allow for more gradual stopping maneuvers and to reduce the likelihood of vehicles running through stop signs or signals. Advance warnings for stop signs are desirable.

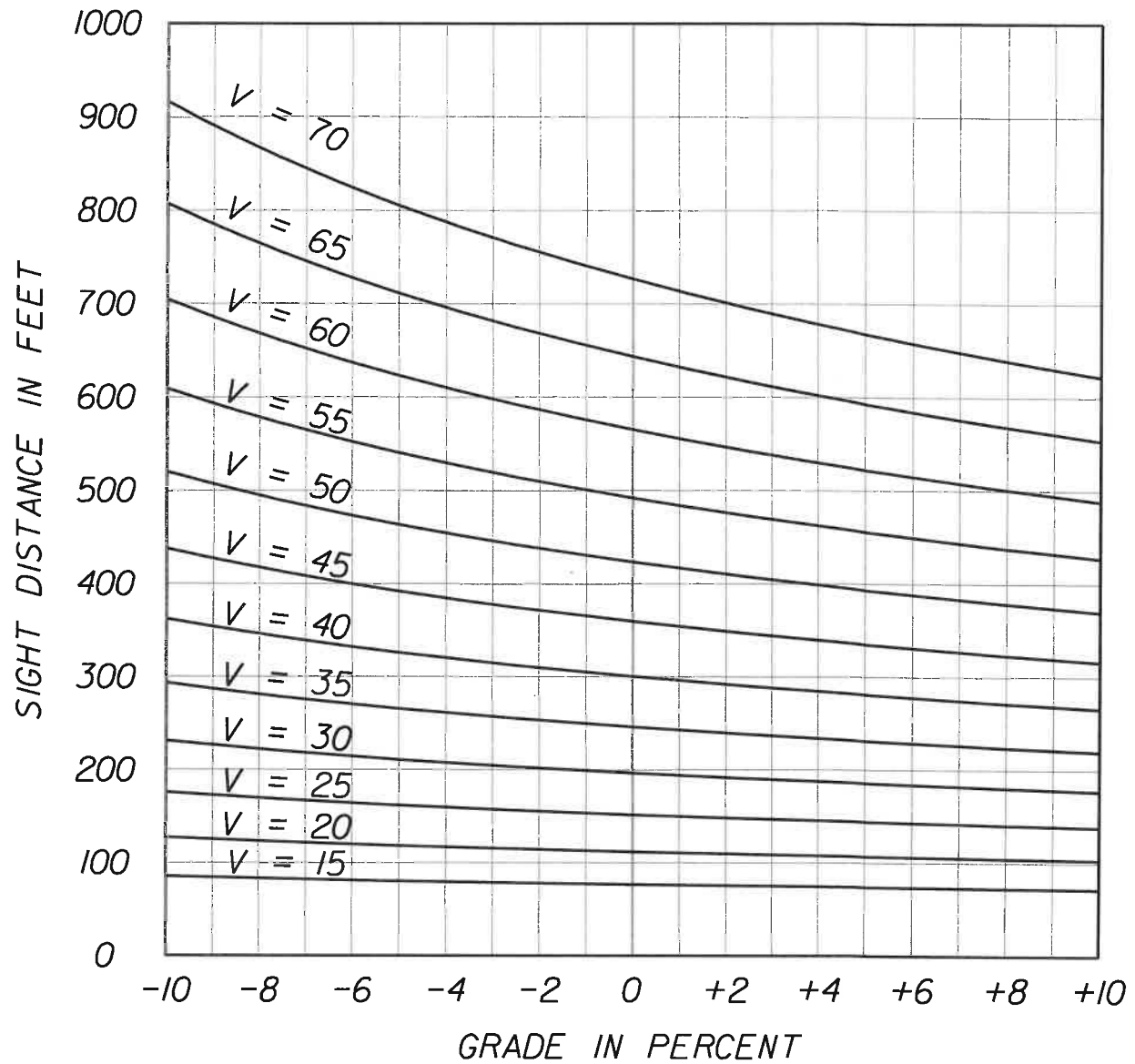
Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values)

| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Stopping Sight Distance (feet) | 115 | 155 | 200 | 250 | 305 | 360 | 425 | 495 | 570 | 645 | 730 |

C.9.b.3.(b) On Turning Roads

The required stopping sight distance at any location on a turning roadway (loop, exit, etc.) shall be based on the design speed at that point. Ample sight distance should be provided since the driver is burdened with negotiating a curved travel path and the available friction factor for stopping has been reduced by the roadway curvature. The minimum sight distance values are given in Table 3 – 25 Minimum Stopping Sight Distance (Rounded Values) or Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades. Due to the inability of vehicle headlights to adequately illuminate a sharply curved travel path, roadway lighting should be considered for turning roadways.

Figure 3 – 15 Sight Distances for Approach to Stop on Grades



$$S = 3.675V + \frac{V^2}{30(0.3478 \pm G)}$$

S = Sight Distance
 V = Design Speed
 G = Grade

C.9.b.4 Sight Distance for Intersection Maneuvers

Sight distance is also provided at intersections to allow the drivers of stopped vehicles a sufficient view of the intersecting street or highway to decide when to enter or cross the intersecting street or highway. Sight triangles, which are specified areas along intersection approach legs and across their included corners, shall, where practical, be clear of obstructions that would prohibit a driver's view of potentially conflicting vehicles. Departure sight triangles shall be provided in each quadrant of each intersection approach controlled by stop signs.

Figures 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right) and 3 – 17 Intersection Sight Distance show typical departure sight triangles to the left and to the right of the location of a stopped vehicle on a minor road (stop controlled) and the intersection sight distances for the various movements.

Distance “a” is the length of leg of the sight triangle along the minor road. This distance is measured from the driver's eye in the stopped vehicle to the center of the nearest lane on the major road (through road) for vehicles approaching from the left, and to the center of the nearest lane for vehicles approaching from the right.

Distance “b” is the length of the leg of the sight triangle along the major road measured from the center of the minor road entrance lane. This distance is a function of the design speed and the time gap in major road traffic needed for minor road drivers turning onto or crossing the major road. This distance is calculated as follows:

$$ISD = 1.47V_{\text{major}}t_g$$

Where:

ISD=Intersection Sight Distance (ft.) – length of leg of sight triangle along the major road.

V_{major} = Design Speed (mph) of the Major Road

t_g = Time gap (sec.) for minor road vehicle to enter the major road.

Time gap values, t_g , to be used in determination of ISD are based on studies and observations of the time gaps in major road traffic actually accepted by drivers turning onto or across the major road. Design time gaps will vary and depend on the design vehicle, the type of the maneuver, the crossing distance involved in the maneuver, and the minor road approach grade.

For intersections with stop control on the minor road, there are three maneuvers or cases that must be considered. ISD is calculated for each maneuver case that may occur at the intersection. The case requiring the greatest ISD will control. Cases that must be considered are as follows (Case numbers correspond to cases identified in the AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011):

Case B1 – Left Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B2 – Right Turns from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

Case B3 – Crossing the Major Road from the Minor (stop controlled) Road

See Sections C.9.b.4.(c) and (d) for design time gaps for Case B.

For Intersections with Traffic Signal Control see Section C.9.b.4.(e) (AASHTO Case D).

For intersections with all way stop control see Section C.9.b.4.(f) (AASHTO Case E).

For left turns from the major road see Section C.9.b.4.(g) (AASHTO Case F).

Figure 3 – 16 Departure Sight Triangle (Traffic Approaching from Left or Right)

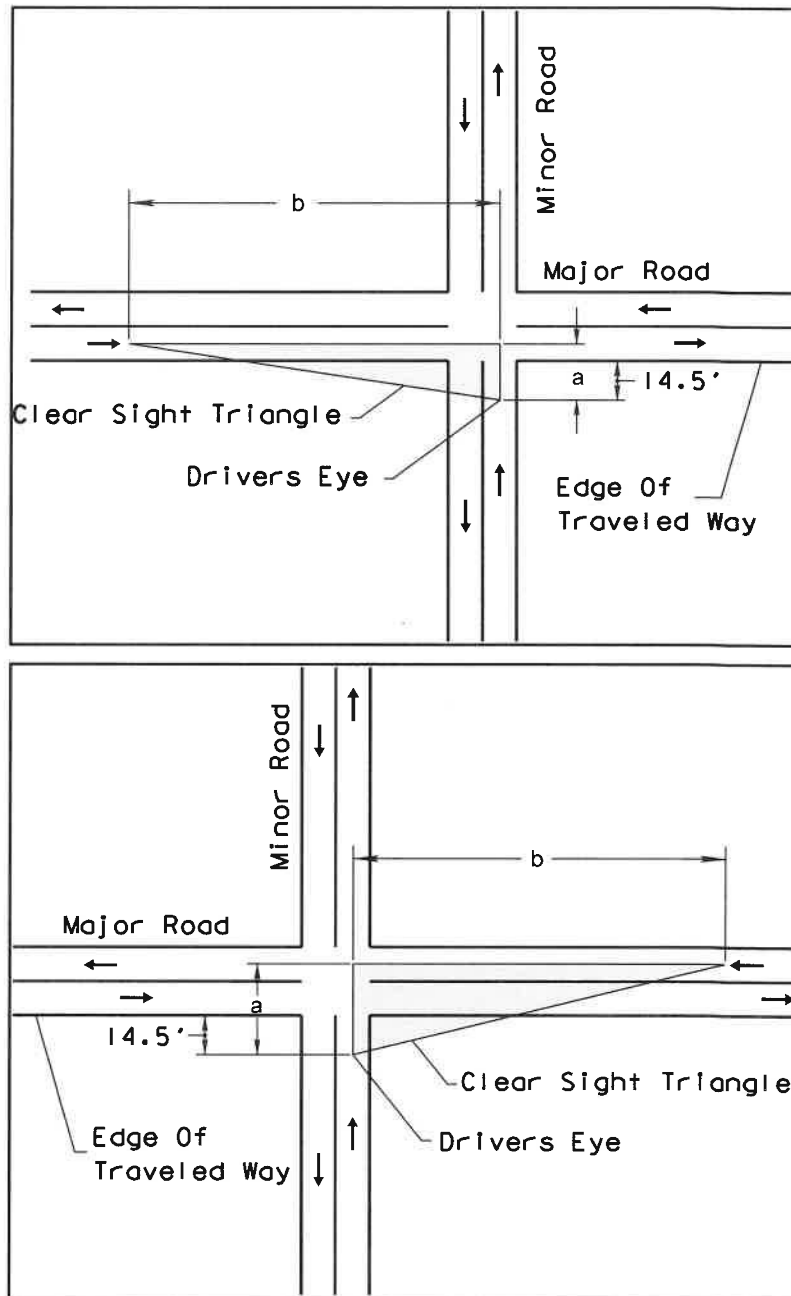
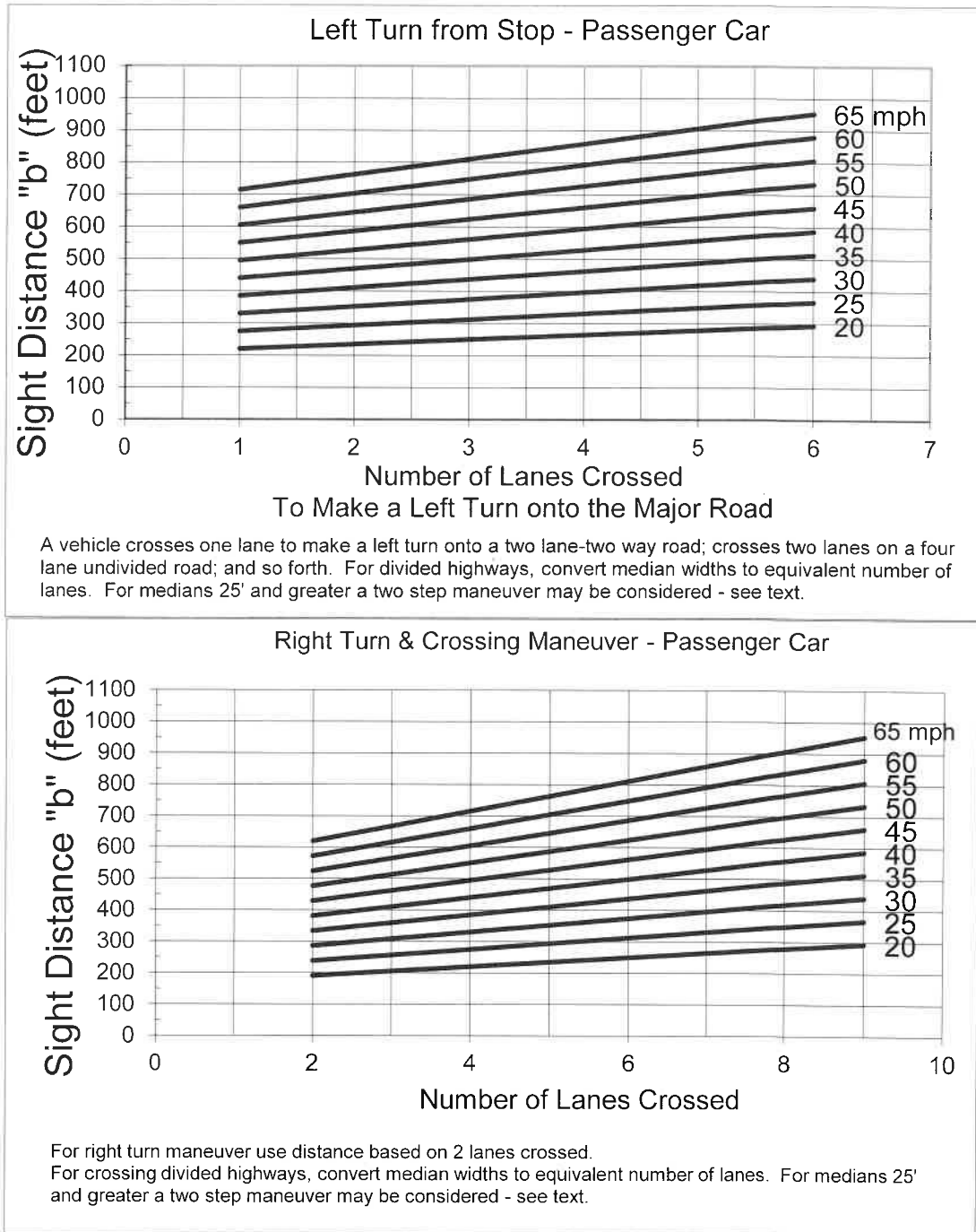


Figure 3 – 17 Intersection Sight Distance



C.9.b.4.(a) Driver's Eye Position and Vehicle Stopping Position

The vertex (decision point or driver's eye position) of the departure sight triangle on the minor road shall be a minimum of 14.5 feet from the edge of the major road traveled way. This is based on observed measurements of vehicle stopping position and the distance from the front of the vehicle to the driver's eye. Field observations of vehicle stopping positions found that, where necessary, drivers will stop with the front of their vehicle 6.5 feet or less from the edge of the major road traveled way. Measurements of passenger cars indicate that the distance from the front of the vehicle to driver's eye for the current U.S. passenger car fleet is almost always 8 feet or less.

When executing a crossing or turning maneuver after stopping at a stop sign, stop bar, or crosswalk as required in **Section 316.123, Florida Statutes**, it is assumed that the vehicle will move slowly forward to obtain sight distance (without intruding into the crossing travel lane) stopping a second time as necessary.

C.9.b.4.(b) Design Vehicle

Dimensions of clear sight triangles are provided for passenger cars, single unit trucks, and combination trucks stopped on the minor road. It can usually be assumed that the minor road vehicle is a passenger car. However, where substantial volumes of heavy vehicles enter the major road, such as from a ramp terminal, the use of tabulated values for single unit or combination trucks should be considered.

C.9.b.4.(c) Case B1 - Left Turns from the Minor Road

Design time gap values for left turns from the minor road onto two lane two way major highway are as follows:

| Design Vehicle | Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Passenger Car | 7.5 |
| Single Unit Truck | 9.5 |
| Combination Truck | 11.5 |

If the minor road approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.2 seconds for each percent grade for left turns.

For multilane streets and highways without medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane from the left, in excess of one, to be crossed by the turning vehicle. The median width should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For multilane streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle a two-step maneuver may be assumed. Use case B2 for crossing to the median.

C.9.b.4.(d) Case B2 - Right Turns From the Minor Road and Case B3 – Crossing Maneuver From the Minor Road

Design time gap values for a stopped vehicle on a minor road to turn right onto or cross a two lane highway are as follows:

| Design Vehicle | Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Passenger Car | 6.5 |
| Single Unit Truck | 8.5 |
| Combination Truck | 10.5 |

If the approach grade is an upgrade that exceeds 3 percent, add 0.1 seconds for each percent grade.

For crossing streets and highways with more than 2 lanes, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars or 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed. Medians not wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle should be included in the width of additional lanes. This is done by converting the median width to an equivalent number of 12 foot lanes.

For crossing divided streets and highways with medians wide enough to store the design vehicle with a clearance of 3 feet on both ends of the vehicle, a two-step maneuver may be assumed. Only the number of lanes to be crossed in each step are considered.

C.9.b.4.(e) Intersections with Traffic Signal Control (AASHTO Case D)

At signalized intersections, the first vehicle stopped on one approach should be visible to the driver of the first vehicle stopped on each of the other approaches. Left turning vehicles should have sufficient sight distance to select gaps in oncoming traffic and complete left turns. Apart from these sight conditions, no other sight triangles are needed for signalized intersections. However, if the traffic signal is to be placed on two-way flashing operation in off peak or nighttime conditions, then the appropriate departure sight triangles for Cases B1, B2, or B3, both to the left and to the right, should be provided. In addition, if right turns on red are to be permitted, then the appropriate departure sight triangle to the left for Case B2 should be provided to accommodate right turns.

C.9.b.4.(f) Intersections with All-Way Stop Control (AASHTO Case E)

At intersections with all-way stop control, the first stopped vehicle on one approach should be visible to the drivers of the first stopped vehicles on each of the other approaches. There are no other sight distance criteria applicable to intersections with all-way stop control.

C.9.b.4.(g) Left Turns from the Major Road (AASHTO Case F)

All locations along a major road from which vehicles are permitted to turn left across opposing traffic shall have sufficient sight distance to accommodate the left turn maneuver. In this case, the ISD is measured from the stopped position of the left turning vehicle (see Figure 3 – 18 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road).

Design time gap values for left turns from the major road are as follows:

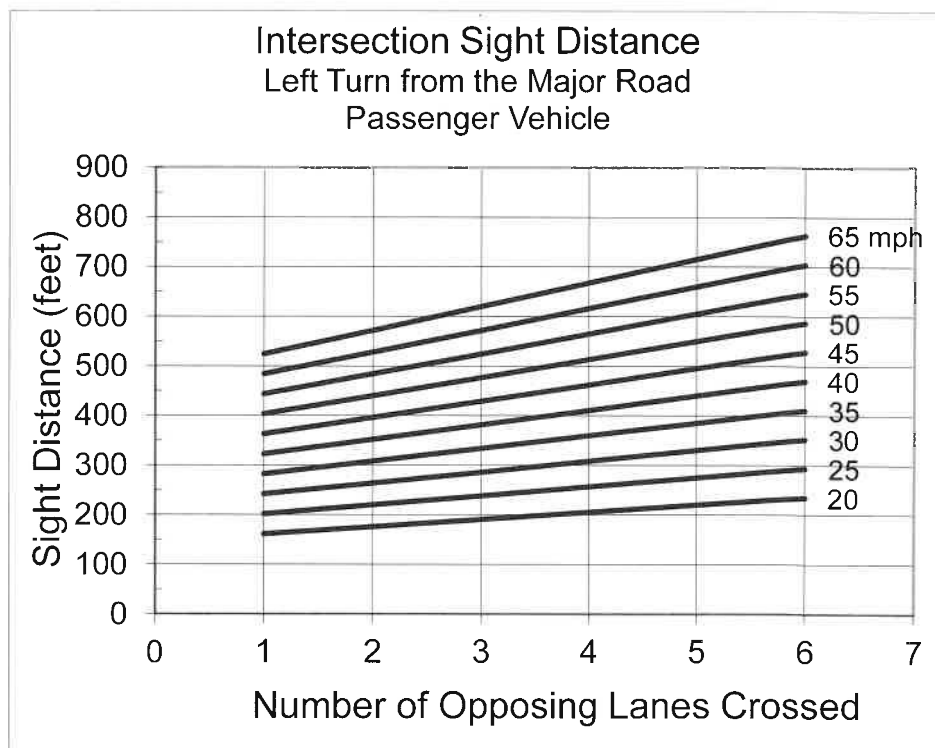
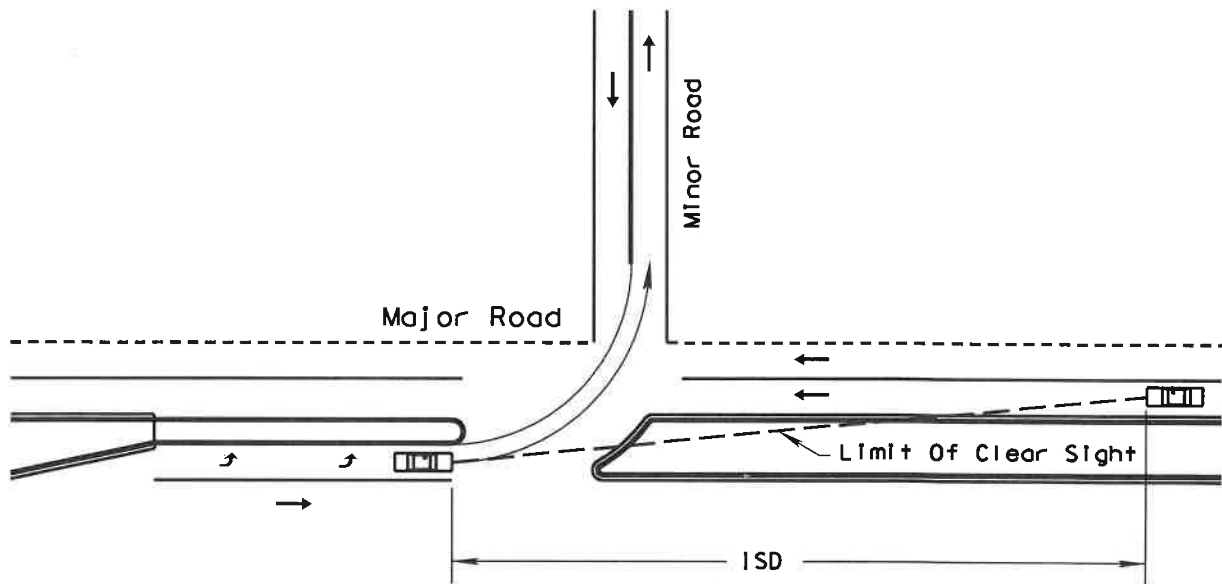
| Design Vehicle | Time Gap (t_g) in Seconds |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| Passenger Car | 5.5 |
| Single Unit Truck | 6.5 |
| Combination Truck | 7.5 |

For left turning vehicles that cross more than one opposing lane, add 0.5 seconds for passenger cars and 0.7 seconds for trucks for each additional lane to be crossed.

C.9.b.4.(h) Intersection Sight Distance References

The Department's *Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections*, provides ISD values for several basic intersection configurations based on Cases B1, B2, B3, and D, and may be used when applicable. For additional guidance on Intersection Sight Distance, see the *AASHTO Green Book (2011)*.

Figure 3 – 18 Sight Distance for Vehicle Turning Left from Major Road



C.9.c Auxiliary Lanes

Auxiliary lanes are desirable for the safe execution of speed change maneuvers (acceleration and deceleration) and for the storage and protection of turning vehicles. Auxiliary lanes for exit or entrance turning maneuvers shall be provided in accordance with the requirements set forth in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. The pavement width and cross slopes of auxiliary lanes should meet the minimum requirements shown in Table 3-19 Minimum Lane Widths.

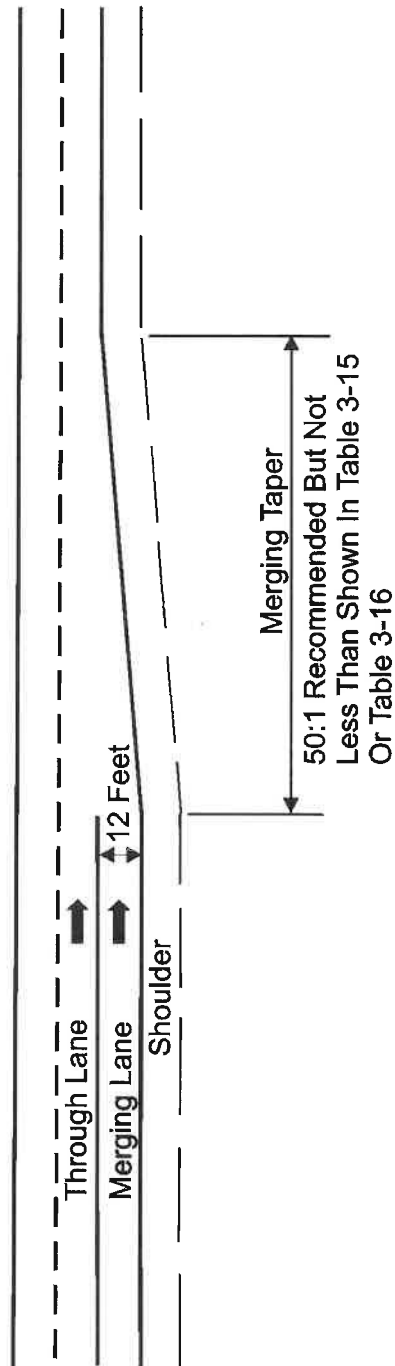
C.9.c.1 Merging Maneuvers

Merging maneuvers occur at the termination of climbing lanes, lane drops, entrance acceleration, and turning lanes. The location provided for this merging maneuver should, where possible, be on a tangent section of the roadway and should be of sufficient length to allow for a smooth, safe transition. The provision of ample distance for merging is essential to allow the driver time to find an acceptable gap in the through traffic and then execute a safe merging maneuver. It is recommended that a merging taper be on a 1:50 transition, but in no case, shall the length be less than set forth in Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes. The termination of this lane should be clearly visible from both the merging and through lane and should correspond to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes. Advance warning of the merging lane termination should be provided. Lane drops shall be marked in accordance with **Section 14-15.010, F.A.C. Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD)**.

Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes

| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
|-------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| Length of Deceleration Taper (feet) | 110 | 130 | 150 | 170 | 190 | 210 | 230 | 250 | 270 | 290 | 300 |
| Length of Acceleration Taper (feet) | 80 | 100 | 120 | 140 | 160 | 180 | 210 | 230 | 250 | 260 | 280 |

Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes



C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes

Acceleration lanes are required for all entrances to expressway and freeway ramps. Acceleration lanes may be desirable at access points to any street or highway with a large percentage of entering truck traffic.

The distance required for an acceleration maneuver is dependent on the vehicle acceleration capabilities, the grade, the initial entrance speed, and the final speed at the termination of the maneuver. The distances required for acceleration on level roadways for passenger cars are given in Table 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades. Where acceleration occurs on a grade, the required distance is obtained by using Table 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level and Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals.

The final speed at the end of the acceleration lane, should, desirably, be assumed as the design speed of the through roadway. The length of acceleration lane provided should be at least as long as the distance required for acceleration between the initial and final speeds. Due to the uncertainties regarding vehicle capabilities and driver behavior, additional length is desirable. The acceleration lane should be followed by a merging taper (similar to Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes), not less than that length set forth in Table 3 – 26 Length of Taper for Use in Conditions with Full Width Speed Change Lanes. The termination of acceleration lanes should conform to the general configuration shown for merging lanes in Figure 3 – 19 Termination of Merging Lanes. Recommended acceleration lanes for freeway entrance terminals are given in Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals.

**Table 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes
 Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less**

| Design Speed of turning roadway curve (mph) | | Stop Condition | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 |
|---|-------------------------|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|-----|
| Minimum curve radius (feet) | | --- | 55 | 100 | 160 | 230 | 320 | 430 | 555 | 695 |
| Design Speed of Highway (mph) | Length of Taper (feet)* | Total length of DECELERATION LANE, including taper, (feet) | | | | | | | | |
| | | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| 30 | 150 | 385 | 350 | 320 | 290 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 35 | 170 | 450 | 420 | 380 | 355 | 320 | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 40 | 190 | 510 | 485 | 455 | 425 | 375 | 345 | --- | --- | --- |
| 45 | 210 | 595 | 560 | 535 | 505 | 460 | 430 | --- | --- | --- |
| 50 | 230 | 665 | 635 | 615 | 585 | 545 | 515 | 455 | 405 | --- |
| 55 | 250 | 730 | 705 | 690 | 660 | 630 | 600 | 535 | 485 | --- |
| 60 | 270 | 800 | 770 | 750 | 730 | 700 | 675 | 620 | 570 | 510 |
| 65 | 290 | 860 | 830 | 810 | 790 | 760 | 730 | 680 | 630 | 570 |
| 70 | 300 | 915 | 890 | 870 | 850 | 820 | 790 | 740 | 690 | 640 |
| Design Speed of Highway (mph) | Length of Taper (feet)* | Total length of ACCELERATION LANE, including taper (feet) | | | | | | | | |
| | | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
| 30 | 120 | 300 | 260 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 35 | 140 | 420 | 360 | 300 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 40 | 160 | 520 | 460 | 430 | 370 | 280 | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 45 | 180 | 740 | 670 | 620 | 560 | 460 | 340 | --- | --- | --- |
| 50 | 210 | 930 | 870 | 820 | 760 | 660 | 560 | 340 | --- | --- |
| 55 | 230 | 1190 | 1130 | 1040 | 1010 | 900 | 780 | 550 | 380 | --- |
| 60 | 250 | 1450 | 1390 | 1350 | 1270 | 1160 | 1050 | 800 | 670 | 430 |
| 65 | 260 | 1670 | 1610 | 1570 | 1480 | 1380 | 1260 | 1030 | 860 | 630 |
| 70 | 280 | 1900 | 1840 | 1800 | 1700 | 1630 | 1510 | 1280 | 1100 | 860 |

* For urban street auxiliary lanes, shorter tapers may be used due to lower operating speeds. Refer to Figure 3-16 for allowable taper rates.

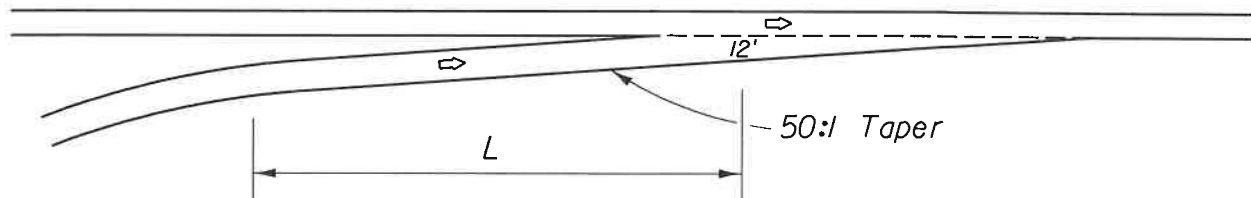
Table 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level

| Deceleration Lane | | | Acceleration Lane | | | | | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------------|-------------------|
| | Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph) | | | Design Speed of Turning Roadway (mph) | | | | | |
| Design Speed of Highway (mph) | All Speeds | All Speeds | Design Speed of Highway (mph) | 20 | 30 | 40 | 50 | All Speeds | |
| | 3% -4% Upgrade | 3%-4% Downgrade | | 3% - 4% Upgrade | | | | | 3% - 4% Downgrade |
| All Speeds | 0.9 | 1.2 | 40 | 1.3 | 1.3 | --- | --- | 0.7 | |
| | | | 45 | 1.3 | 1.35 | --- | --- | 0.675 | |
| | | | 50 | 1.3 | 1.4 | 1.4 | --- | 0.65 | |
| | | | 55 | 1.35 | 1.45 | 1.45 | --- | 0.625 | |
| | | | 60 | 1.4 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 0.6 | |
| | | | 65 | 1.45 | 1.55 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 0.6 | |
| | | | 70 | 1.5 | 1.6 | 1.7 | 1.8 | 0.6 | |
| | 5% - 6% Upgrade | 5% - 6% Downgrade | | 5% - 6% Upgrade | | | | | 5% - 6% Downgrade |
| All Speeds | 0.8 | 1.35 | 40 | 1.5 | 1.5 | --- | --- | 0.6 | |
| | | | 45 | 1.5 | 1.6 | --- | --- | 0.575 | |
| | | | 50 | 1.5 | 1.7 | 1.9 | --- | 0.55 | |
| | | | 55 | 1.6 | 1.8 | 2.05 | --- | 0.525 | |
| | | | 60 | 1.7 | 1.9 | 2.2 | 2.5 | 0.5 | |
| | | | 65 | 1.85 | 2.05 | 2.4 | 2.75 | 0.5 | |
| | | | 70 | 2.0 | 2.2 | 2.6 | 3.0 | 0.5 | |
| Ratios in this table multiplied by the values in Table 3 – 26 give the length of speed change lane for the respective grade. | | | | | | | | | |

Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals

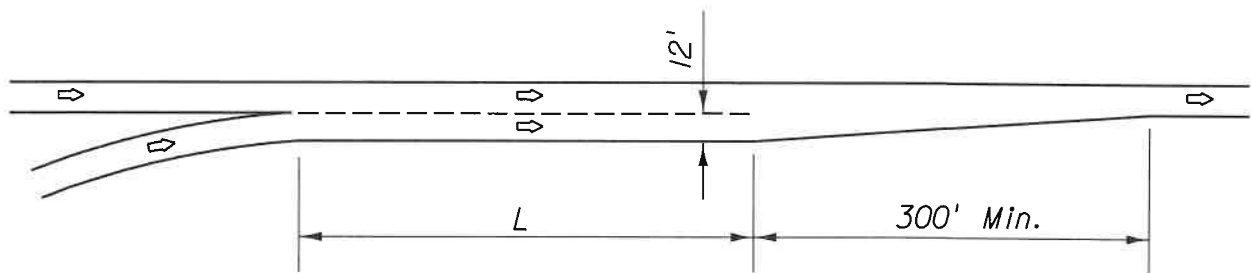
| Highway Design Speed (mph) | L = Acceleration Length (feet) | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-----|-----|
| | For Entrance Curve Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | | | |
| | Stop Condition | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 |
| 30 | 180 | 140 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 35 | 280 | 220 | 160 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 40 | 360 | 300 | 270 | 210 | 120 | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 45 | 560 | 490 | 440 | 380 | 280 | 160 | --- | --- | --- |
| 50 | 720 | 660 | 610 | 550 | 450 | 350 | 130 | --- | --- |
| 55 | 960 | 900 | 810 | 780 | 670 | 550 | 320 | 150 | --- |
| 60 | 1200 | 1140 | 1100 | 1020 | 910 | 800 | 550 | 420 | 180 |
| 65 | 1410 | 1350 | 1310 | 1220 | 1120 | 1000 | 770 | 600 | 370 |
| 70 | 1620 | 1560 | 1520 | 1420 | 1350 | 1,230 | 1000 | 820 | 580 |

Expressway and Freeway Entrance Terminals



TAPER TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is 50 mph or greater.



PARALLEL TYPE

Recommended when design speed at entrance curve is less than 50 mph.

C.9.c.3 Exit Lanes

Auxiliary lanes for exiting maneuvers provide space outside the through lanes for protection and storage of decelerating vehicles exiting the facility.

- Deceleration Lanes - The primary function of deceleration lanes is to provide a safe travel path for vehicles decelerating from the operating speed on the through lanes. Deceleration lanes are required for all freeway exits and are desirable on high-speed (design speed greater than 50 mph) streets and highways.

The distance required for deceleration of passenger cars is given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals.

The required distance for deceleration on grades is given in Tables 3 – 27 Design Lengths of Speed Change Lanes Flat Grades - 2 Percent or Less and 3 – 28 Ratio of Length of Speed Change Lane on Grade to Length on Level.

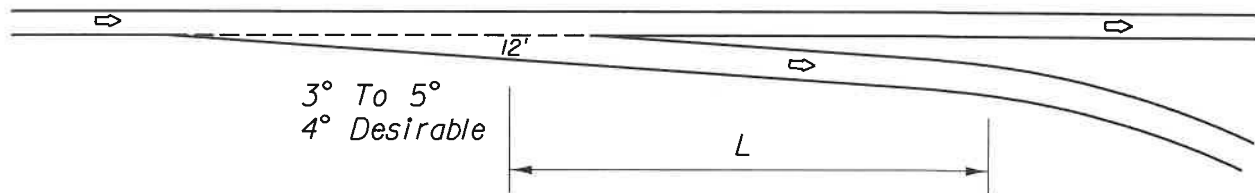
The length of deceleration lanes shall be no less than the values obtained from Tables 3 – 27 and 3 – 28 and should be increased wherever feasible. The initial speed should, desirably, be taken as the design speed of the highway. The final speed should be the design speed at the exit (e.g., a turning roadway) or zero, if the deceleration lane terminates at a stop or traffic signal. A reduction in the final speed to be used is particularly important if the exit traffic volume is high, since the speed of these vehicles may be significantly reduced.

The entrance to deceleration (and climbing) lanes should conform to the general configuration shown in Figure 3 – 20 Entrance for Deceleration Lane. The initial length of straight taper, shown in Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals, may be utilized as a portion of the total required deceleration distance. The pavement surface of the deceleration lane should be clearly visible to approaching traffic, so drivers are aware of the maneuvers required. Recommended deceleration lanes for exit terminals are given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals.

Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals

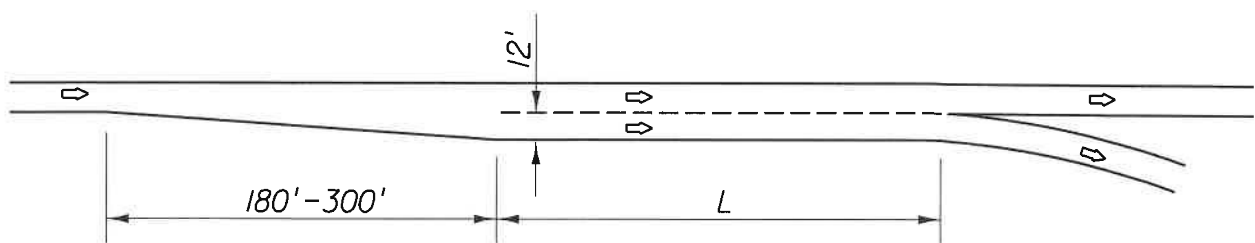
| Highway Design Speed (mph) | L = Deceleration Length (feet) | | | | | | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| | For Design Speed of Exit Curve (mph) | | | | | | | | |
| | Stop Condition | 15 | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 |
| 30 | 235 | 200 | 170 | 140 | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 35 | 280 | 250 | 210 | 185 | 150 | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 40 | 320 | 295 | 265 | 235 | 185 | 155 | --- | --- | --- |
| 45 | 385 | 350 | 325 | 295 | 250 | 220 | --- | --- | --- |
| 50 | 435 | 405 | 385 | 355 | 315 | 285 | 225 | 175 | --- |
| 55 | 480 | 455 | 440 | 410 | 380 | 350 | 285 | 235 | --- |
| 60 | 530 | 500 | 480 | 460 | 430 | 405 | 350 | 300 | 240 |
| 65 | 570 | 540 | 520 | 500 | 470 | 440 | 390 | 340 | 280 |
| 70 | 615 | 590 | 570 | 550 | 520 | 490 | 440 | 390 | 340 |

Expressway and Freeway Exit Terminals



TAPER TYPE

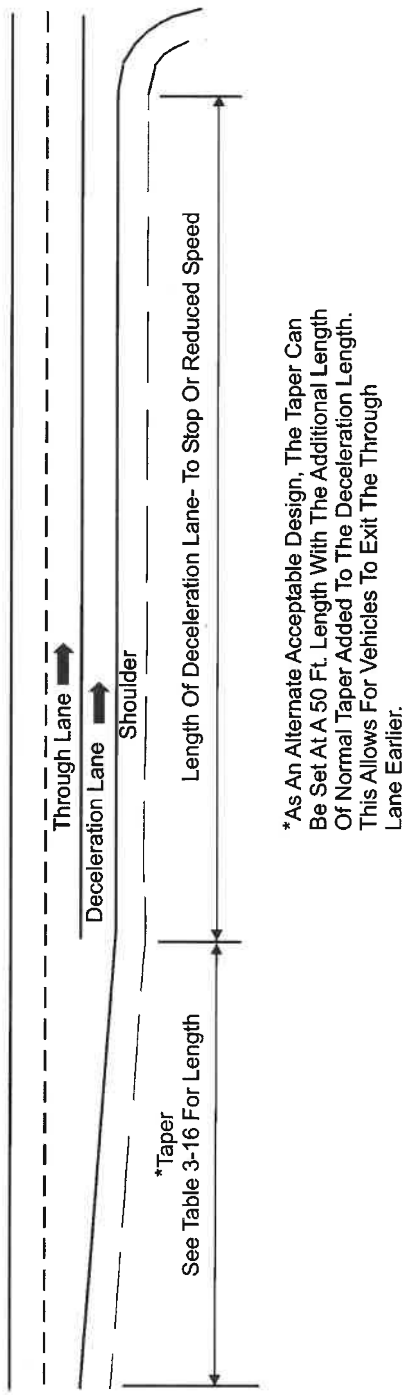
Recommended when design speed at exit curve is 50 mph or greater and when approach visibility is good.



PARALLEL TYPE

Recommended when design speed at exit curve is less than 50 mph or when approach visibility is not good.

Figure 3 – 20 Entrance for Deceleration Lane



C.9.c.4 Auxiliary Lanes at Intersections

The primary function of auxiliary lanes at intersections is to accommodate speed changes and maneuvering of turning traffic. They are typically added to increase capacity and/or reduce crashes at an intersection. Auxiliary lanes for deceleration and storage of queuing vehicles are used preceding intersections and median openings for left-turning and right-turning movements. In some cases, auxiliary lanes for acceleration are used following right-turning movements.

C.9.c.4.(a) Widths of Auxiliary Lanes

The minimum widths for auxiliary lanes are given in Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths.

C.9.c.4.(b) Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration

Recommended lengths for auxiliary lanes for deceleration (turn lanes) at intersections are provided in Figure 3 – 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes) and Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians. These lengths are based on the Department's criteria. As shown in Figure 3 – 21, the total length of turn lanes consists of three components, (1) Deceleration Length, (2) Storage or Queue Length and (3) Entering Taper. It is common practice to accept a moderate amount of deceleration within the through lanes and to consider the taper as part of the deceleration length. The length criteria for each of the auxiliary lane components are explained as follows:

Deceleration Length

The required total deceleration length is that needed for a safe and comfortable stop from the design speed of the highway. Minimum deceleration lengths (including taper) for auxiliary lanes are provided in Figure 3 – 21 and are based on minimum stopping sight distance.

Storage (Queue) Length

The auxiliary lane should be sufficiently long to store the number of vehicles likely to accumulate during a critical period. The storage length should be sufficient to avoid the possibilities of turning vehicles stopping in the through lanes or the entrance to the auxiliary lane being blocked by vehicles queuing in the through lanes.

At unsignalized intersections the storage length, exclusive of taper, may be based on the number of turning vehicles likely to arrive in an average two-minute period within the peak hour. For low volume intersections where a traffic study is not justified, a minimum 50-foot queue length (2 vehicles) should be provided on rural highways. A minimum 100-foot queue length (4 vehicles) should be provided in urban areas. Locations with over 10% truck traffic should accommodate at least one car and one truck.

At signalized intersections, the required storage length is determined by traffic study and depends on the signal cycle length, the signal phasing arrangement and the rate of arrivals and departures of turning vehicles. The storage length is a function of the probability of occurrence of events and should be based on 1.5 to 2 times the average number of vehicles that would store per cycle that is predicted in the design volume.

Where dual turning lanes are used, the required storage length is reduced to approximately one-half of that required for single-lane operation.

Approach End Taper

The Department's criteria for approach end taper lengths for turn lanes are 50 feet for a single turn lane and 100 feet for a double turn lane, as shown in Figure 3 - 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes) and Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians. These taper lengths apply to all design speeds and are recommended for

use on turn lanes on all roads. Short taper lengths are intended to provide approaching road users with positive identification of an added auxiliary lane and results in a longer full width auxiliary lane than use of longer taper lengths based on the path that road users actually follow. The clearance distances L_1 and L_3 account for the full transition lengths a road user will use to enter the auxiliary lane for various speed conditions assumed for design.

It is acceptable to lengthen the taper up to L_1 for single left turns and L_3 for double left turns where traffic study can establish that left turn queue vehicles are adequately provided for within the design queue length and through vehicle queues will not block access to the left turn lane(s).

Figure 3 – 21 Auxiliary Lanes for Deceleration at Intersections (Turn Lanes)

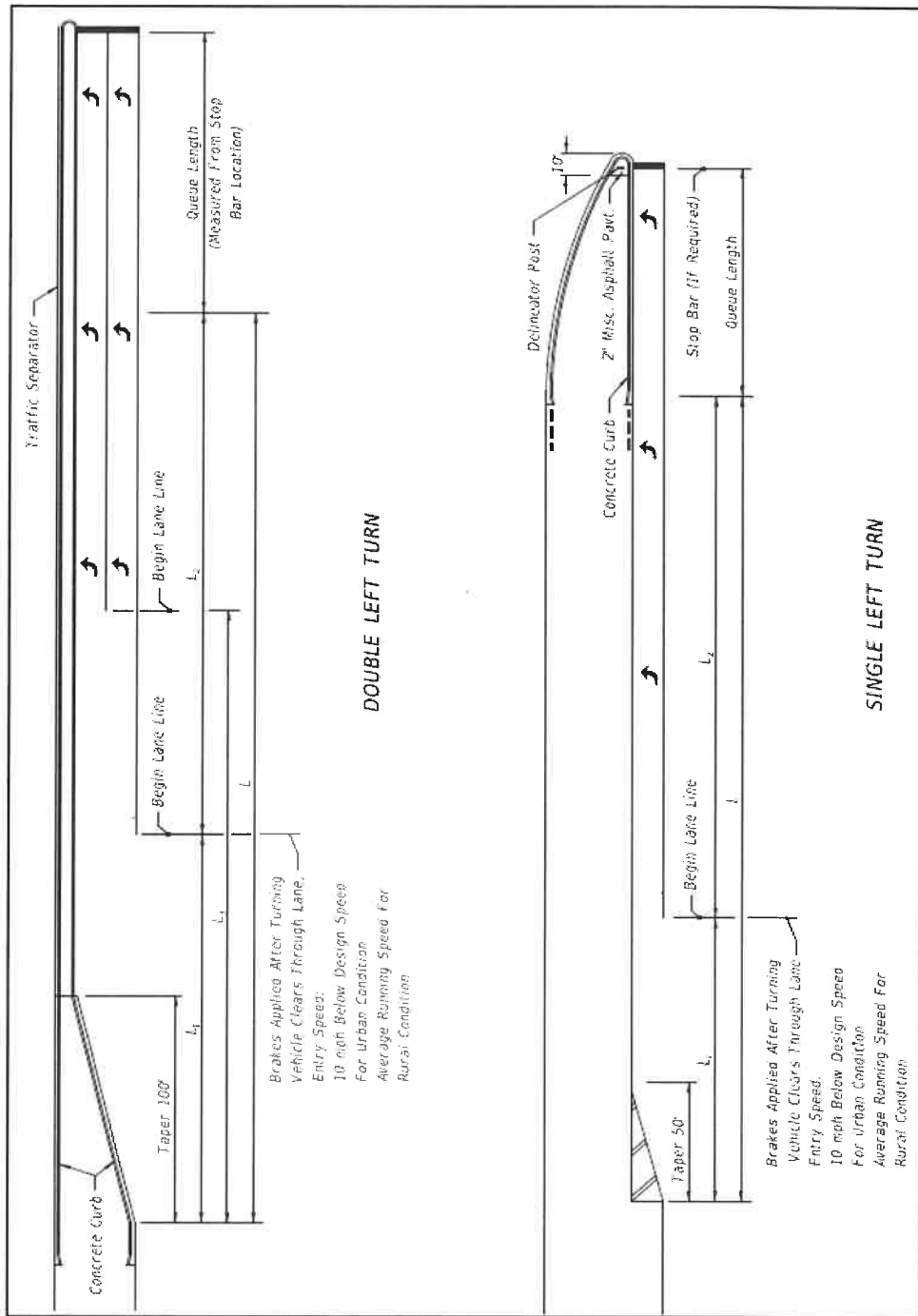


Table 3 – 31 Turn Lanes – Curbed and Uncurbed Medians

| Design Speed (mph) | Entry Speed (mph) | Clearance Distance L ₁ (feet) | Urban Conditions | | | Rural Conditions | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|--|--|--------------------------------|--|
| | | | Brake to Stop Distance L ₂ (feet) | Total Decel. Distance L (feet) | Clearance Distance L ₃ (feet) | Brake to Stop Distance L ₂ (feet) | Total Decel. Distance L (feet) | Clearance Distance L ₃ (feet) |
| ≤ 30 | ≤ 25 | 60 | 75 | 135 | 100 | | | |
| 35 | 25 | 70 | 75 | 145 | 110 | ---- | ---- | ---- |
| 40 | 30 | 80 | 75 | 155 | 120 | ---- | ---- | ---- |
| 45 | 35 | 85 | 100 | 185 | 135 | ---- | ---- | ---- |
| 50 | 40/44 | 105 | 135 | 240 | 160 | 185 | 290 | 160 |
| 55 | 48 | 125 | ---- | ---- | ---- | 225 | 350 | 195 |
| 60 | 52 | 145 | ---- | ---- | ---- | 260 | 405 | 230 |
| 65 | 55 | 170 | ---- | ---- | ---- | 290 | 460 | 270 |

Note: Right turn lane tapers and distances are identical to left turn lanes under stop control conditions. For free flow or yield control conditions, taper lengths and distances are site specific.

C.9.c.4.(c) Lengths of Auxiliary Lanes for Acceleration

Acceleration lanes similar to those used for freeways and expressways are sometimes used at intersections. They are not always desirable at stop-controlled intersections where entering drivers can wait for an opportunity to merge without disrupting through traffic. Acceleration lanes are advantageous on roads without stop control and on all high-volume roads even with stop control where openings between vehicles in the peak-hour traffic streams are infrequent and short. When used, acceleration lanes at intersections should be designed using the criteria provided in Section C.9.c.2 Acceleration Lanes.

C.9.d Turning Roadways at Intersections

The design and construction of turning roadways shall meet the same general requirements for through roadways, except for the specific requirements given in the subsequent sections.

C.9.d.1 Design Speed

Lanes for turning movements at grade intersections may, where justified, be based on a design speed as low as 10 mph. Turning roadways with design speeds in excess of 40 mph shall be designed in accordance with the requirements for through roadways.

A variable design speed may be used to establish cross section and alignment criteria for turning roadways that will experience acceleration and deceleration maneuvers.

C.9.d.2 Horizontal Alignment

- Curvature - The minimum permitted radii (maximum degree) of curvature for various values of superelevation are given in Table 3 – 32 Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections. These should be considered as minimum values only and the radius of curvature should be increased wherever feasible. Further information contained in **AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011**, should also be considered.

Table 3 – 32 Superelevation Rates for Curves at Intersections

| | Design Speed (mph) | | | | | | |
|-----------------------------|--------------------|------|------|------|------|------|--|
| | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | |
| Minimum Superelevation Rate | 0.02 | 0.04 | 0.06 | 0.08 | 0.09 | 0.10 | |
| Minimum Radius (feet) | 90 | 150 | 230 | 310 | 430 | 540 | |

The rate of 0.02 is considered the practical minimum for effective drainage across the surface.

Note: Preferably use superelevation rates greater than these minimum values.

- **Superelevation Transition** - Minimum superelevation transition (runoff) rates (maximum relative gradients) are given in Tables 3 – 33 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections and 3 – 34 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals. Other information given in *AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011*, should also be considered.

Table 3 – 33 Maximum Rate of Change in Pavement Edge Elevation for Curves at Intersections

| Design Speed (mph) | 20 | 25 | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 | 55 | 60 | 65 | 70 |
|--|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| Maximum relative gradients for profiles between the edge of two lane pavement and the centerline (percent) | 0.74 | 0.70 | 0.66 | 0.62 | 0.58 | 0.54 | 0.50 | 0.47 | 0.45 | 0.43 | 0.40 |

Table 3 – 34 Maximum Algebraic Difference in Pavement Cross Slope at Turning Roadway Terminals

| Design Speed of Exit or Entrance Curve (mph) | Maximum Algebraic Difference in Cross Slope at Crossover Line (percent) |
|--|---|
| 20 and under | 5.0 to 8.0 |
| 25 and 30 | 5.0 to 6.0 |
| 35 and over | 4.0 to 5.0 |

C.9.d.3 Vertical Alignment

Grades on turning roadways should be as flat as practical and long vertical curves should be used wherever feasible. The length of vertical curves shall be no less than necessary to provide minimum stopping sight distance. Minimum stopping sight distance values are given in Table 3 – 4 Minimum Stopping Sight Distances. For additional guidance on vertical alignment for turning roadways, see ***AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011.***

C.9.d.4 Cross Section Elements

- Number of Lanes - One-way turning roadways are often limited to a single traffic lane. In this case, the total width of the roadway shall be sufficient to allow traffic to pass a disabled vehicle. Two-way, undivided turning roadways should be avoided. Medians or barriers should be utilized to separate opposing traffic on turning roadways.
- Lane Width - The width of all traffic lanes should be sufficient to accommodate (with adequate clearances) the turning movements of the expected types of vehicles. The minimum required lane widths for turning roadways are given in Table 3 - 35 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles. Changes in lane widths should be gradual and should be accomplished in coordination with adequate transitions in horizontal curvature.
- Shoulders - On one-lane turning roadways, serving expressways and other arterials (e.g., loops, ramps), the right hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide. The left hand shoulder should be at least 6 feet wide in all cases. On two-lane, one-way roadways, both shoulders should be at least 6 feet wide. Where guardrails or other barriers are used, they should be placed at least 8 feet from edge of travel lane. Guardrails should be placed 2 feet outside the normal shoulder width.

- Clear Zones - Turning roadways should, as a minimum, meet all open highway criteria for clear zones on both sides of the roadway. The areas on the outside of curves should be wider and more gently sloped than the minimum values for open highways. Guardrails or similar barriers shall be used if the minimum width and slope requirements cannot be obtained.

Further criteria and requirements for roadway design are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

Table 3 – 35 Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicles

| Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet) | Case 1, One-Lane Operation, No Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|-------|----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|----|-----|-----|
| | P | SU-30 | Su-40 | City Bus | S-Bus-36 | A-Bus | WB-40 | WB-62 | WB-67 | WB-67D | MH | P/T | P/B |
| 50 | 13 | 18 | 21 | 21 | 18 | 22 | 23 | 44 | 57 | 29 | 18 | 19 | 18 |
| 75 | 13 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 17 | 19 | 20 | 30 | 33 | 23 | 17 | 17 | 17 |
| 100 | 13 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 16 | 18 | 18 | 25 | 28 | 21 | 16 | 16 | 16 |
| 150 | 12 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 16 | 17 | 17 | 22 | 23 | 19 | 15 | 16 | 15 |
| 200 | 12 | 15 | 16 | 16 | 15 | 16 | 16 | 20 | 21 | 18 | 15 | 15 | 15 |
| 300 | 12 | 15 | 15 | 16 | 15 | 16 | 15 | 18 | 19 | 17 | 15 | 15 | 15 |
| 400 | 12 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 17 | 18 | 16 | 15 | 15 | 14 |
| 500 | 12 | 14 | 15 | 15 | 14 | 15 | 15 | 17 | 17 | 16 | 14 | 14 | 14 |
| Target | 12 | 14 | 14 | 15 | 14 | 15 | 14 | 15 | 15 | 15 | 14 | 14 | 14 |

| Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet) | Case II, One-Lane, One-Way Operation, with Provision for Passing a Stalled Vehicle by Another of the Same Type | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|-------|----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|----|-----|-----|
| | P | SU-30 | SU-40 | City Bus | S-Bus-36 | A-Bus | WB-40 | WB-62 | WB-67 | WB-67D | MH | P/T | P/B |
| 50 | 20 | 30 | 36 | 38 | 31 | 40 | 39 | 81 | 109 | 50 | 30 | 30 | 28 |
| 75 | 19 | 27 | 30 | 32 | 27 | 34 | 32 | 53 | 59 | 39 | 27 | 27 | 26 |
| 100 | 18 | 25 | 27 | 30 | 25 | 30 | 29 | 44 | 48 | 34 | 25 | 25 | 24 |
| 150 | 18 | 23 | 25 | 27 | 23 | 27 | 26 | 36 | 38 | 29 | 23 | 23 | 23 |
| 200 | 17 | 22 | 24 | 25 | 23 | 26 | 24 | 32 | 34 | 27 | 22 | 22 | 22 |
| 300 | 17 | 22 | 22 | 24 | 22 | 24 | 23 | 28 | 30 | 25 | 22 | 22 | 21 |
| 400 | 17 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 21 | 23 | 22 | 26 | 27 | 24 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| 500 | 17 | 21 | 21 | 23 | 21 | 23 | 22 | 25 | 26 | 23 | 21 | 21 | 21 |
| Target | 17 | 20 | 20 | 21 | 20 | 21 | 20 | 21 | 21 | 21 | 20 | 20 | 20 |

Table Continued on Next Page

| Radius on Inner Edge of Pavement, R (feet) | Case III, Two-Lane Operation, Either One- or Two-Way (Same Type Vehicle in Both Lanes) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------|-------|----------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|----|-----|-----|
| | P | SU-30 | SU-40 | City Bus | S-Bus-36 | A-Bus | WB-40 | WB-62 | WB-67 | WB-67D | MH | P/T | P/B |
| 50 | 26 | 36 | 42 | 44 | 37 | 46 | 45 | 87 | 115 | 56 | 36 | 36 | 34 |
| 75 | 25 | 33 | 36 | 38 | 33 | 40 | 38 | 59 | 65 | 45 | 33 | 33 | 32 |
| 100 | 24 | 31 | 33 | 35 | 31 | 36 | 35 | 50 | 54 | 40 | 31 | 31 | 30 |
| 150 | 24 | 29 | 31 | 33 | 29 | 33 | 32 | 42 | 44 | 35 | 29 | 29 | 29 |
| 200 | 23 | 28 | 30 | 31 | 29 | 32 | 30 | 38 | 40 | 33 | 28 | 28 | 28 |
| 300 | 23 | 28 | 28 | 30 | 28 | 30 | 29 | 34 | 36 | 31 | 28 | 28 | 27 |
| 400 | 23 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 27 | 29 | 28 | 32 | 33 | 30 | 27 | 27 | 27 |
| 500 | 23 | 27 | 27 | 29 | 27 | 29 | 28 | 31 | 32 | 29 | 27 | 27 | 27 |
| Target | 23 | 26 | 26 | 27 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 27 | 27 | 27 | 26 | 26 | 26 |

Source – 2011 AASHTO Greenbook, Table 3-28b Derived Pavement Widths for Turning Roadways for Different Design Vehicle

C.9.e At Grade Intersections

C.9.e.1 Turning Radii

Where right turns from through or turn lanes will be negotiated at low speeds (less than 10 mph), the minimum turning capabilities of the vehicle may govern the design. It is desirable that the turning radius and the required lane width be provided in accordance with the criteria for turning roadways. The radius of the inside edge of traveled way should be sufficient to allow the expected vehicles to negotiate the turn without encroaching the shoulder or adjacent traffic lanes.

Where turning roadway criteria are not used, the radius of the inside edge of traveled way should be no less than 25 feet. The use of three-centered compound curves is also a reasonable practice to allow for transition into and out of the curve. The recommended radii and arrangement of compound curves instead of a single simple curve is given in *AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011*.

C.9.e.2 Cross Section Correlation

The correlation of the cross section of two intersecting roadways is frequently difficult. A careful analysis should be conducted to ensure changes in slope are not excessive and adequate drainage is provided. At stop-controlled intersections, the through roadway cross section should be carried through the intersection without interruption. Minor roadways should approach the intersection at a slightly reduced elevation so the through roadway cross section is not disturbed. At signalized intersections, it is sometimes necessary to remove part of the crown in order to avoid an undesirable hump in one roadway.

Intersections of grade or cross slope should be gently rounded to improve vehicle operation. Pavement generally should be sloped toward the intersection corners to provide superelevation for turning maneuvers and to promote proper drainage.

Where islands are used for channelization, the width of traffic lanes for turning movements shall be no less than the widths recommended by AASHTO.

C.9.e.3 Median Openings

Median openings should be restricted in accordance with the requirements presented in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. Where a median opening is required, the length of the opening shall be no less than 40 feet. Median curbs should be terminated gradually without the exposure of abrupt curb ends. The termination requirements are given in **Chapter 4 - Roadside Design**.

C.9.e.4 Channelization

Channelization of at grade intersections is the regulation or separation of conflicting movements into definite travel paths by islands, markings, or other means, to promote safe, orderly traffic flow. The major objective of channelization is to clearly define the appropriate paths of travel and thus assist in the prevention of vehicles deviating excessively or making wrong maneuvers.

Channelization may be used effectively to define the proper path for exits, entrances, and intersection turning movements. The methods used for channelization should be as simple as possible and consistent in nature. The channelized intersection should appear open and natural to the approaching driver. Channelization should be informative rather than restrictive in nature.

The use of low sloping curbs and flush medians and islands can provide adequate delineation in most cases. Islands should be clearly visible and, in general, should not be smaller than 100 square feet in area. The use of small and/or numerous islands should be avoided.

Pavement markings are a useful and effective tool for providing delineation and channelization in an informative rather than restrictive fashion. The layout of all traffic control devices should be closely coordinated with the design of all channelization.

C.9.f Driveways

Direct driveway access within the area of influence of the intersection should be discouraged.

Driveways from major traffic generators (greater than 400 vpd), or those with significant truck/bus traffic, should be designed as normal intersections.

C.9.g Interchanges

The design of interchanges for the intersection of a freeway with a major street or highway, collector/distributor road, or other freeway is a complex problem. The location and spacing of intersections should follow the requirements presented in C.8 Access Control, this chapter. The design of interchanges shall follow the general intersection requirements for deceleration, acceleration, merging maneuvers, turning roadways, and sight distance.

Interchanges, particularly along a given freeway, should be reasonably consistent in their design. A basic principle in the design should be to develop simple open interchanges that are easily traversed and understandable to the driver. Complex interchanges with a profusion of possible travel paths are confusing and hazardous to the motorist and are generally inefficient.

Intersections with minor streets or highways or collector/distributor roads may be accomplished by simple diamond interchanges. The intersection of exit and entrance ramps with the crossroad shall meet all intersection requirements.

The design of freeway exits should conform to the general configurations given in Table 3 – 30 Minimum Deceleration Lengths for Exit Terminals. Exits should be on the right and should be placed on horizontal curves. Where deceleration on an exit loop is required, the deceleration alignment should be designed so the driver receives adequate warning of the approaching increase in curvature. This is best accomplished by gradually increasing the curvature and the resulting centrifugal force. This increasing centrifugal force provides warning to the driver that he must slow down. A clear view of the exit loop should also be provided. The length of deceleration shall be no less than the values shown in Table – 29.

Entrances to freeways should be designed in accordance with the general configurations shown below Table 3 – 29 Minimum Acceleration Lengths for Entrance Terminals. Special care should be taken to ensure vehicles entering from loops are not directed across through travel lanes. The entering roadway should be brought parallel (or nearly so) to the through lanes before entry is permitted. Where acceleration is required, the distances shown in Table 3 – 29 shall, as a minimum, be provided. Exits and entrances to all high-speed facilities (design speed greater than 50 mph), should, where feasible, be designed in accordance with Tables 3 – 30 and 3 – 29. The lengths obtained from Tables 3 – 30 and 3 – 29 should be adjusted for grade by using the ratios in Table 3 – 28.

The selection of the type and exact design details of a particular interchange requires considerable study and thought. The guidelines and design details given in ***AASHTO "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011***, should generally be considered as minimum criteria.

C.9.h Clear Zone

The provisions of ample clear zone or proper redirection of energy absorbing devices is particularly important at intersections. Every effort should be made to open up the area around the intersection to provide adequate clear zone for vehicles that have left the traveled way. Drivers frequently leave the proper travel path due to unsuccessful turning maneuvers or due to the necessity for emergency avoidance maneuvers. Vehicles also leave the roadway after intersection collisions and roadside objects should be removed to reduce the probability of second impacts. The roadside areas at all intersections and interchanges should be contoured to provide shallow slopes and gentle changes in grade.

The roadside clear zone of intersecting roadways should be carried throughout intersections with no discontinuities or interruptions. Poles and support structures for lights, signs, and signals should not be placed in medians or within the roadside clear zone.

The design of guardrails or other barriers should receive particular attention at intersections. Impact attenuators should be used in all gore and other areas where structures cannot be removed.

Particular attention should be given to the protection of pedestrians in intersection areas - ***Chapter 8 - Pedestrian Facilities***. Further criteria and requirements for clear zone and protection devices at intersections are given in ***Chapter 4 - Roadside Design***.

C.10 Other Design Factors

C.10.a Pedestrian Facilities

The layout and design of the street and highway network should include provisions for pedestrian traffic in urban areas. All pedestrian crossings and pathways within the road right of way should be considered and designed as an integral part of any street or urban highway.

C.10.a.1 Policy and Objectives - New Facilities

The planning and design of new streets and highways shall include provisions for the safe, orderly movement of pedestrian traffic.

The overall objective is to provide a safe, continuous, convenient, and comfortable trip for pedestrian traffic.

C.10.a.2 Accessibility Requirements

Pedestrian facilities, such as sidewalks, shared use paths and transit boarding and alighting areas shall be designed to accommodate people with disabilities. In addition to the design criteria provided in this Manual, the *Department of Transportation ADA Standards for Transportation Facilities (2006)* and *Department of Justice ADA Standards (2010)* as required by 49 C.F.R 37.41 or 37.43; and the *2017 Florida Building Code – Accessibility, 6th Edition* as required by *Rule Chapter 61G20-4.002, Florida Administrative Code* impose additional requirements for the design and construction of pedestrian facilities.

C.10.a.3 Sidewalks

Sidewalks should provide a safe, comfortable space for pedestrians. The width of sidewalks is dependent upon the roadside environment, volume of pedestrians, and the presence of businesses, schools, parks, and other pedestrian attractors. The minimum width for sidewalks is covered in **Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities** and Section C.7.d of this chapter. To ensure compliance with federal and state accessibility requirements:

- Sidewalks less than 60 inches wide must have passing spaces of at least 60 inches by 60 inches, at intervals not to exceed 200 feet.
- The minimum clear width may be reduced to 32 inches for a short distance. This distance must be less than 24 inches long, and separated by 5-foot long sections with 48 inches of clear width.

- Sidewalks not constrained within the roadway right of way with slopes greater than 1:20 are considered ramps and must be designed as such.

Sidewalks 5 feet wide or wider will provide for two adults to walk comfortably side by side.

C.10.a.4 Curb Ramps

In areas with sidewalks, curb ramps must be incorporated at locations where crosswalks adjoin the sidewalks. The basic curb ramp type and design application depends on the geometric characteristics of the intersection or other crossing location.

Typical curb ramp width shall be a minimum of 4 feet with 1:10 curb transitions on each side when pedestrians must walk across the ramp. Ramp slopes shall not exceed 1:12 and shall have a firm, stable, slip resistant surface texture. Ramp widths equal to crosswalk widths are encouraged.

Curb ramps at marked crossings shall be wholly contained within the crosswalk markings excluding any flared sides.

If diagonal ramps must be used, any returned curbs or other well-defined edges shall be parallel to the pedestrian flow. The bottom of diagonal curb ramps shall have 48-inch minimum clear space within the crosswalk. Curb ramps whose sides have returned curbs provide useful directional cues where they are aligned with the pedestrian street crossing and are protected from cross travel by landscaping or street, street furniture, or railings.

It is important for persons using the sidewalk that the location of the ramps be as uniform as possible. Detectable warnings are required at all curb ramps and flush transitions where sidewalks or shared use paths meet a roadway.

The Department's *Standard Plans, Index 522-002* provides additional information on the design of accessible sidewalks and shared use paths. Designers should keep in mind there are many

variables involved, possibly requiring each street intersection to have a unique design.

Two ramps per corner are preferred to minimize the problems with entry angle and to decrease the delay to pedestrians entering and exiting the roadway.

C.10.a.5 Additional Considerations

For additional information on pedestrian facilities design, including physical separation from the roadway, over- and underpasses, pedestrian crossings, traffic control, sight distance and lighting, refer to ***Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities***.

C.10.b Bicycle Facilities

Provisions for bicycle traffic should be incorporated into the street or highway design. All new roadways and major corridor improvements, except limited access highways, should be designed and constructed under the assumption they will be used by bicyclists. Roadway conditions should be favorable for bicycling. This includes appropriate drainage grates, pavement markings, and railroad crossings, smooth pavements, and signals responsive to bicycles. In addition, facilities such as bicycle lanes, shared use paths, and paved shoulders, should be included to the fullest extent feasible. All flush shoulder arterial and collector roadway sections should be given consideration for the construction of 4-foot or 5-foot paved shoulders. In addition, all curbed arterial and collector sections should be given consideration for bicycle lanes.

For additional information on bicycle facilities design and the design of shared use paths, refer to ***Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities***.

C.10.c Bridge Design Loadings

The minimum design loading for all new and reconstructed bridges shall be in accordance with ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures***.

C.10.d Dead End Streets and Cul-de-Sacs

The end of a dead-end street should permit travel return with a turnaround area, considering backing movements, which will accommodate single truck or transit vehicles without encroachment upon private property. Recommended treatment for dead end streets and cul-de-sacs is given in Figure 5-1 Types of Cul-de-Sacs and Dead-End Streets of **AASHTO – "A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets" - 2011**.

C.10.e Bus Benches and Transit Shelters

Bus benches should be set back at least 10 feet from the travel lane in curbed sections with a design speed of 45 mph or less, and outside the clear zone in flush shoulder sections. See **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design**, Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset for further information.

Any bus bench or transit shelter adjacent to a sidewalk within the right of way of any street or highway shall be located to leave at least 48 inches of clearance for pedestrians and persons in wheelchairs. An additional one foot of clearance is required when any side of the sidewalk is adjacent to a curb or barrier. Such clearance shall be measured in a direction perpendicular to the centerline of the road. A separate bench pad or sidewalk flare out that provides a 30-inch-wide by 48-inch-deep wheelchair space adjacent to the bench shall be provided. Transit shelters should be set back, rather than eliminated during roadway widening.

Additional information on the design of transit facilities is found in **Chapter 13 – Public Transit** and **Rule 14-20.003, F.A.C.** and **Rule 14-20.0032, F.A.C.**

C.10.f Traffic Calming

Often there are community concerns with controlling travel speeds impacting the safety of a street or highway such as in areas of concentrated pedestrian activities, those with narrow right of way, areas with numerous access points, on street parking, and other similar concerns. Local authorities may elect to use traffic calming design features that could include, but not be limited to, the installation of speed humps, speed tables, chicanes, or other pavement undulations. Roundabouts are also another

method of dealing with this issue at intersections. For additional details and traffic calming treatments, refer to **Chapter 15 – Traffic Calming**.

C.11 Reconstruction

C.11.a Introduction

The reconstruction (improvement or upgrading) of existing facilities may generate equal or greater safety benefits than similar expenditures for the construction of new streets and highways. Modifications to increase capacity should be evaluated for the potential effect on the highway safety characteristics. The long-range objectives should be to bring the existing network into compliance with current standards.

C.11.b Evaluation of Streets and Highways

The evaluation of the safety characteristics of streets and highways should be directed towards the identification of undesirable features on the existing system. Particular effort should be exerted to identify the location and nature of features with a high crash potential. Methods for identifying and evaluating hazards include the following:

- Identification of any geometric design feature not in compliance with minimum or desirable standards. This could be accomplished through a systematic survey and evaluation of existing facilities.
- Review of conflict points along a corridor.
- Information from maintenance or other personnel.
- Review of crash reports and traffic counts to identify locations with a large number of crashes or a high crash rate.
- Review for expected pedestrian and bicycle needs.

C.11.c Priorities

A large percentage of street and highway reconstruction and improvements is directed toward increasing efficiency and capacity. The program of reconstruction should be based, to a large extent, upon priorities for the improvement of safety characteristics.

The priorities for safety improvements should be based on the objective of obtaining the maximum reduction in crash potential for a given expenditure of funds. Elimination of conditions that may result in serious or fatal crashes should receive the highest priority in the schedule for reconstruction.

Specific high priority problem areas that should be corrected by reconstruction include the following:

- Obstructions to sight distance which can be economically corrected. The removal of buildings, parked vehicles, vegetation, large poles or groups of poles that significantly reduce the field of vision, and signs to improve sight distance on curves and particularly at intersections, can be of immense benefit in reducing crashes. The purchase of required line of sight easements is often a wise expenditure of highway funds. The establishment of sight distance setback lines is encouraged.
- Roadside and median hazards which can often be removed or relocated farther from the traveled way. Where removal is not feasible, objects should be shielded by redirection or energy absorbing devices. The reduction of the roadside hazard problem generally provides a good return on the safety dollar. Details and priorities for roadside hazard reduction, which are presented in **Chapter 4 - Roadside Design**, should be incorporated into the overall priorities of the reconstruction program.
- Poor pavement surfaces which have become hazardous should be maintained or reconstructed in accordance with the design criteria set forth in **Chapter 5 - Pavement Design And Construction**, and **Chapter 10 – Maintenance And Resurfacing**.
- Specific design features which could be applied during reconstruction to enhance the operations and safety characteristics of a roadway include the following:
 - Addition of lighting.
 - Frontage roads may be utilized to improve the efficiency and safety of streets and highways with poor control of access.
 - Widening of pavements and shoulders. This is often an economically feasible method of increasing capacity and reducing traffic hazards. Provision of median barriers (**Chapter 4 - Roadside Design**) can also produce significant safety benefits.

- The removal, streamlining, or modification of drainage structures.
- Alignment modifications are usually extensive and require extensive reconstruction of the roadway. Removal of isolated sharp curves is a reasonable and logical step in alignment modification. If major realignment is to be undertaken, every effort should be made to bring the entire facility into compliance with the requirements for new construction.
- The use of traffic control devices. This is generally an inexpensive method of alleviating certain highway defects.
- Median opening modifications.
- Addition of median, channelized islands, and mid-block pedestrian crossings.
- Auxiliary lanes.
- Existing bridges that fail to meet current design standards which are available to bicycle traffic, should be retrofitted on an interim basis as follows: As a general practice, bridges 125 feet in length or longer, bridges with unusual sight problem, steep gradients (which require the cyclist longer time to clear the span) or other unusual conditions should display the standard W11-1 caution sign with an added sign "On Bridge" at either end of the structure. Special care should be given to the right most portion of the roadway, where bicyclists are expected to travel, assuring smoothness, pavement uniformity, and freedom from longitudinal joints, and to ensure cleanliness. Failure to do so forces bicyclists farther into the center portion of the bridge, reducing traffic flow and safety.
- Addition of bicycle facilities.
- Addition of transit facilities, sidewalks, crosswalks, and other pedestrian features.

C.12 Design Exceptions

See **Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions and Variations** for the process to use when the standard criteria found in this Manual cannot be met.

C.13 Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT \leq 400)

Where criteria is not specifically provided in this section, the design guidelines presented in Chapter 4 of the *AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads (ADT \leq 400), 1st Edition (2001)* may be used in lieu of the policies in Chapter 5 of the AASHTO Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets. See Table 3 – 20 Minimum Lane Widths for lane widths for very low volume roads.

C.13.a Bridge Width

Bridges are considered functionally obsolete when the combination of ADT and bridge width is used in the National Bridge Inventory Item 68 for Deck Geometry to give a rating of 3 or less. To accommodate future traffic and prevent new bridges from being classified as functionally obsolete, the minimum roadway width for new two lane bridges on very low-volume roads with 20 year ADT between 100 and 400 vehicles/day shall be a minimum of 22 feet. If the entire roadway width (traveled way plus shoulders) is paved to a width greater than 22 feet, the bridge width should be equal to the total roadway width. If significant ADT increases are projected beyond twenty years, a bridge width of 28 feet should be considered. One-lane bridges may be provided on single-lane roads and on two-lane roads with ADT less than 100 vehicles/day where a one-lane bridge can operate effectively. The roadway width of a one-lane bridge shall be 15 ft. One-lane bridges should have pull-offs visible from opposite ends of the bridge where drivers can wait for traffic on the bridge to clear.

C.13.b Roadside Design

Bridge traffic barriers on very low-volume roads must have been successfully crash tested to a Test Level 2 (minimum) in accordance with NCHRP Report 350 or Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware (MASH).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

| | | |
|-------|--|------|
| A | INTRODUCTION | 4-1 |
| B | ROADSIDE TOPOGRAPHY AND DRAINAGE FEATURES | 4-3 |
| B.1 | Roadside Slopes, Clear Zone and Lateral Offset | 4-3 |
| B.1.a | Roadside Slopes and Clear Zone | 4-3 |
| B.1.b | Lateral Offset | 4-11 |
| B.2 | Drainage Features | 4-12 |
| B.2.a | Roadside Ditches | 4-13 |
| B.2.b | Drainage Structures | 4-13 |
| B.2.c | Canals and Water Bodies | 4-13 |
| B.2.d | Curb | 4-16 |
| C | ROADSIDE SAFETY FEATURES AND CRASH TEST CRITERIA | 4-18 |
| C.1 | Crash Test Criteria | 4-18 |
| C.2 | Safety Hardware Upgrades | 4-22 |
| D | SIGNS, SIGNALS, LIGHTING SUPPORTS, UTILITY POLES, TREES AND SIMILAR ROADSIDE FEATURES | 4-23 |
| D.1 | General | 4-23 |
| D.2 | Performance Requirements for Breakaway Devices | 4-23 |
| D.3 | Sign Supports | 4-23 |
| D.4 | Traffic Signal Supports | 4-24 |
| D.5 | Lighting Supports | 4-24 |
| D.5.a | Conventional Lighting | 4-24 |
| D.5.b | High Mast Lighting | 4-25 |
| D.6 | Utility Poles | 4-25 |
| D.7 | Trees | 4-26 |
| D.8 | Miscellaneous | 4-26 |
| D.8.a | Fire Hydrants | 4-26 |
| D.8.b | Railroad Crossing Warning Devices | 4-26 |
| D.8.c | Mailbox Supports | 4-26 |

| | | | | |
|---|-------|--|--|------|
| | D.8.d | Bus Benches and Shelters..... | 4-29 | |
| E | | BARRIERS, END TREATMENTS AND CRASH CUSHIONS..... | 4-30 | |
| | E.1 | Roadside Barriers | 4-30 | |
| | E.2 | End Treatments | 4-30 | |
| | E.3 | Crash Cushions | 4-31 | |
| | E.4 | Performance Requirements | 4-31 | |
| | E.5 | Warrants | 4-31 | |
| | | E.5.a Above Ground Hazards | 4-31 | |
| | | E.5.b Drop-Off Hazards..... | 4-32 | |
| | | E.5.c Canals and Water Bodies | 4-32 | |
| | E.6 | Warrants for Median Barriers | 4-32 | |
| | E.7 | Work Zones and Temporary Barriers | 4-33 | |
| | E.8 | Barrier Types | 4-35 | |
| | | E.8.a Guardrail | 4-35 | |
| | | E.8.b Concrete Barrier..... | 4-36 | |
| | | E.8.c High Tension Cable Barrier..... | 4-37 | |
| | | E.8.d Temporary Barrier..... | 4-38 | |
| | | E.8.e Selection Guidelines | 4-38 | |
| | | E.8.f Placement..... | 4-39 | |
| | | | E.8.f.1 Barrier Offsets | 4-39 |
| | | | E.8.f.2 Deflection Space and Zone of Intrusion | 4-41 |
| | | | E.8.f.3 Grading | 4-41 |
| | | | E.8.f.4 Curbs..... | 4-41 |
| | | | E.8.f.5 Flare Rate | 4-41 |
| | | | E.8.f.6 Length of Need..... | 4-42 |
| | E.8.g | Barrier Transitions..... | 4-43 | |
| | E.8.h | Attachments to Barriers | 4-43 | |
| | E.9 | End Treatments and Crash Cushions | 4-43 | |
| | | E.9.a End Treatments for Guardrail..... | 4-43 | |
| | | E.9.b End Treatments for Rigid Barrier | 4-44 | |
| | | E.9.c End Treatments for High Tension Cable Barrier (HTCB) ... | 4-44 | |
| | | E.9.d End Treatments for Temporary Barrier | 4-44 | |
| | | E.9.e Crash Cushions | 4-45 | |

| | | |
|---|---|------|
| F | BRIDGE RAILS | 4-45 |
| G | REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES | 4-46 |

TABLES

| | | |
|-------------|---|------|
| Table 4 – 1 | Minimum Width of Clear Zone (feet) ¹ | 4-5 |
| Table 4 – 2 | Lateral Offset (feet) | 4-12 |
| Table 4 – 3 | Test Levels for Barriers, End Terminals, Crash Cushions..... | 4-20 |
| Table 4 – 4 | Test Levels for Breakaway Devices, Work Zone Traffic Control Devices | 4-21 |
| Table 4 – 5 | Clear Zone Width Requirements for Work Zones | 4-34 |

FIGURES

| | | |
|--------------|--|------|
| Figure 4 – 1 | Clear Zone Plan View | 4-6 |
| Figure 4 – 2 | Basic Clear Zone Concept | 4-7 |
| Figure 4 – 3 | Adjusted Clear Zone Concept | 4-7 |
| Figure 4 – 4 | Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width 0 to < 4 Feet | 4-9 |
| Figure 4 – 5 | Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width \geq 4 Feet | 4-10 |
| Figure 4 – 6 | Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders)..... | 4-15 |
| Figure 4 – 7 | Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Curbed) | 4-16 |
| Figure 4 – 8 | Location of Guardrail..... | 4-40 |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 4

ROADSIDE DESIGN

A INTRODUCTION

This chapter presents guidelines and standards for roadside designs intended to reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of roadside crashes. Due to the variety of causative factors, the designer should review crash reports for vehicles leaving the traveled way at any location. On average, lane departure crashes in Florida represent approximately 1/3 of all crashes and almost 50% of all highway fatalities. Construction and maintenance of safe medians and roadsides are of vital importance in the development of safe streets and highways. More information on lane departure crashes in Florida can be found in the Department's [*Florida Strategic Highway Safety Plan*](#).

Many of the standards presented in **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design** are predicated to a large extent upon reducing the probability of vehicles leaving the proper travel path. The intent of this chapter is to reduce the consequences of crashes by vehicles leaving the roadway. The design of the roadside beyond the shoulder should be considered and conducted as an integral part of the total highway design.

The general objective of roadside design is to provide an environment that will reduce the likelihood and/or consequences of crashes by vehicles that have left the traveled way. The achievement of this general objective will be aided by the following:

- Roadside areas adequate to allow reasonable space and time for a driver to regain or retain control of the vehicle and stop or return to the traveled way safely.
- Shoulders, medians, and roadsides that may be traversed safely without vehicle vaulting or overturning.
- Location of roadside fixed objects and hazards as far from the travel lane as is economically feasible.
- Roadsides that accommodate necessary maintenance vehicles, emergency maneuvers and emergency parking.
- Providing adequate shielding of hazards where appropriate and compatible with vehicle speeds and other design variables.

Prior to any other consideration, the designer should, in order of preference, attempt to:

1. Eliminate the hazard
 - a. Remove the hazard
 - b. Redesign the hazard so it can be safely traversed
 - c. Relocate the hazard outside the clear zone
2. Make the hazard crashworthy
3. Shield the hazard with a longitudinal barrier or crash cushion.
4. Delineate the hazard and leave the hazard unshielded. This treatment is taken only when the barrier or crash cushion is more hazardous than the hazard. See Section E.5 for information on making this determination.

This chapter contains standards and general guidelines for situations encountered in roadside design due to the variety and complexity of possible situations encountered. In addressing roadside hazards, the designer should utilize the following as basic guidelines to develop a safe roadside design.

B ROADSIDE TOPOGRAPHY AND DRAINAGE FEATURES

B.1 Roadside Slopes, Clear Zone and Lateral Offset

Providing a sufficient amount of recoverable slope or clear zone adjacent to the roadway, free of obstacles and hazards provides an opportunity for an errant vehicle to safely recover. Minimum standards for roadside slopes, clear zone and lateral offsets to hazards are provided as follows.

B.1.a Roadside Slopes and Clear Zone

The slopes of all roadsides should be as flat as possible to allow for safe traversal by out of control vehicles. A slope of 1:4 or flatter should be used, desirably 1:6 or flatter. The transition between the shoulder and adjacent side slope should be rounded and free from discontinuities. A slope as steep as 1:3 may be used within the clear zone if the clear zone width is adjusted to provide a clear runout area as described below. If sufficient right of way exists, use flatter side slopes on the outside of horizontal curves.

Clear zone is the unobstructed, traversable area beyond the edge of the traveled way for the recovery of errant vehicles. The clear zone includes shoulders and bicycle lanes. The clear zone must be free of aboveground fixed objects, water bodies and non-traversable or critical slopes. Clear zone width requirements are dependent on AADT, design speed, and roadside slope conditions. With regard to the ability of an errant vehicle to traverse a roadside slope, slopes are classified as follows:

1. Recoverable Slope – Traversable Slope 1:4 or flatter. Motorists who encroach on recoverable foreslopes generally can stop their vehicles or slow them enough to return to the roadway safely.
2. Non-Recoverable Slope – Traversable Slope steeper than 1:4 and flatter than 1:3. Non-recoverable foreslopes are traversable but most vehicles will not be able to stop or return to the roadway easily. Vehicles on such slopes typically can be expected to reach the bottom.
3. Critical Slope – Non-Traversable Slope steeper than 1:3. A critical foreslope is one on which an errant vehicle has a higher propensity to overturn.

Clear zone widths for recoverable foreslopes 1V:4H and flatter are provided in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone. Clear zone is applied as shown in Figures 4 – 1 Clear Zone Plan View and 4 – 2 Basic Clear Zone Concept. Clear zone is measured from the edge of the traveled way.

On non-recoverable slopes steeper than 1:4 and flatter than 1:3, a high percentage of encroaching vehicles will reach the toe of these slopes. Therefore, the clear zone distance cannot logically end at the toe of a non-recoverable slope. When such non-recoverable slopes are present within the clear zone width provided in Table 4 – 1, additional clear zone width is required. The minimum amount of additional width provided must equal the width of the non-recoverable slope with no less than 10 feet of recoverable slope provided at the toe of the non-recoverable slope. See Figure 4 – 3 Adjusted Clear Zone Concept.

When clear zone requirements cannot be met, see **Sections C, D** and **E** for requirements for roadside barriers and other treatments for safe roadside design. In addition, the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide \(2011\)*](#), and [*AASHTO Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low Volume Local Roads \(ADT ≤ 400\) \(2001\)*](#) may be referenced for a more thorough discussion of roadside design.

Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone (feet)¹

| Design Speed mph | AADT ≥ 1500 | | | AADT < 1500 ^{1, 2} | | |
|------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| | Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps | | Aux Lanes and Single Lane Ramps | Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps | | Aux Lanes and Single Lane Ramps |
| | 1V:6H or flatter | 1V:5H to 1V:4H | 1V:4H or flatter | 1V:6H or flatter | 1V:5H to 1V:4H | 1V:4H or flatter |
| ≤ 40 | 14 | 16 | 10 | 10 ² | 12 ² | 10 ² |
| 45 – 50 | 20 | 24 | 14 | 14 | 16 | 14 |
| 55 | 22 | 26 | 18 | 16 | 20 | 14 |
| 60 | 30 | 30 ³ | 24 | 20 | 26 | 18 |
| 65 – 70 | 30 | 30 ³ | 24 | 24 | 28 | 18 |

1. Clear Zone for roads functionally classified as Local Roads with a design AADT ≤ 400 vehicles per day:

- A clear zone of 6 feet or more in width must be provided if it can be done so with minimum social/environmental impacts.
- Where constraints of cost, terrain, right of way, or potential social/environmental impacts make the provision of a 6 feet clear zone impractical, clear zones less than 6 feet in width may be used, including designs with 0 feet clear zone.
- In all cases, clear zone must be tailored to site-specific conditions, considering cost-effectiveness and safety tradeoffs. The use of adjustable clear zone widths, such as wider clear zone dimensions at sharp horizontal curves where there is a history of run-off-road crashes, or where there is evidence of vehicle encroachments such as scarring of trees or utility poles, may be appropriate. Lesser values of clear zone width may be appropriate on tangent sections of the same roadway.
- Other factors for consideration in analyzing the need for providing clear zones include the crash history, the expectation for future traffic volume growth on the facility, and the presence of vehicles wider than 8.5 feet and vehicles with wide loads, such as farm equipment.

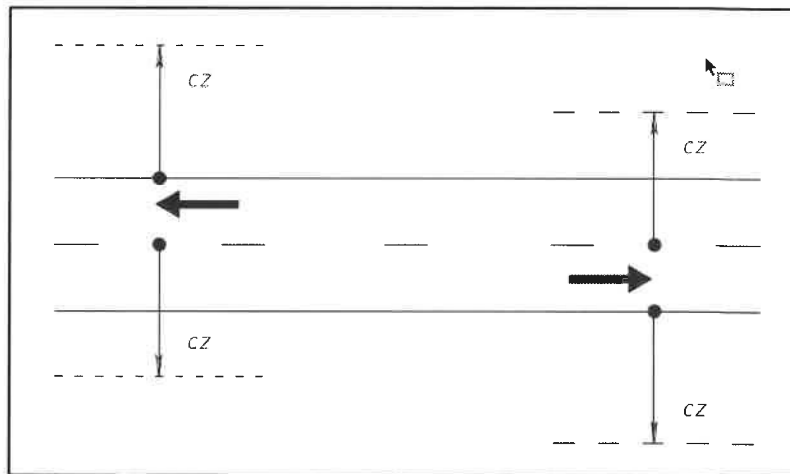
2. May be reduced to 7 feet for a design AADT < 750 vehicles per day.

3. Greater clear zone widths provide additional safety for higher speed and volume roads. See Section 3.1 of the [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide \(2011\)](#) for further information.

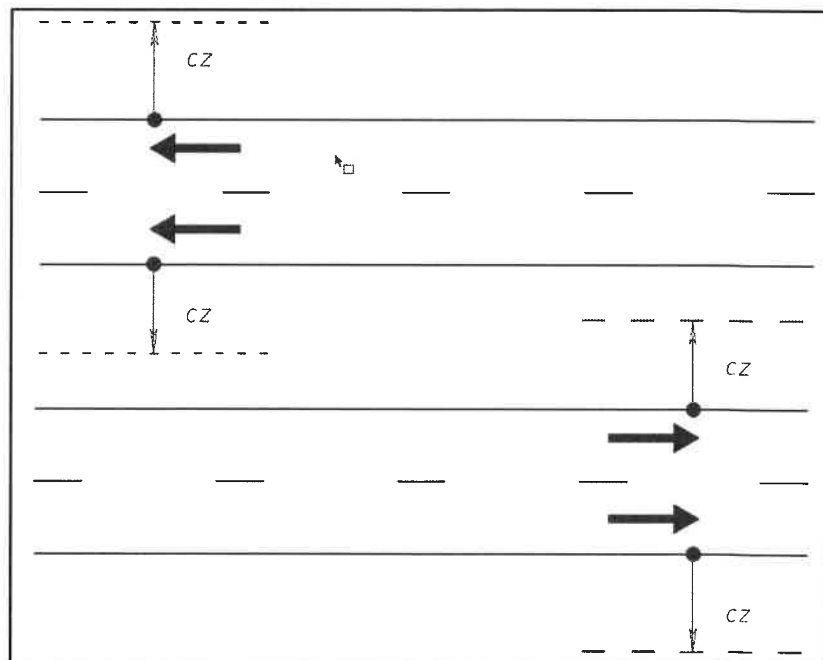
Source: Table 3 – 1, Suggested Clear Zone Distances in Feet from the Edge of the Travel Lane, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

Figure 4 – 1 Clear Zone Plan View

Two Lane, Two -Way Roadway



Multi-Lane Two-Way Roadway



Note: 1. Lateral offset is measured out from the centerline of roadway and edge of traveled way or face of curb to a roadside object or feature.

Figure 4 – 2 Basic Clear Zone Concept

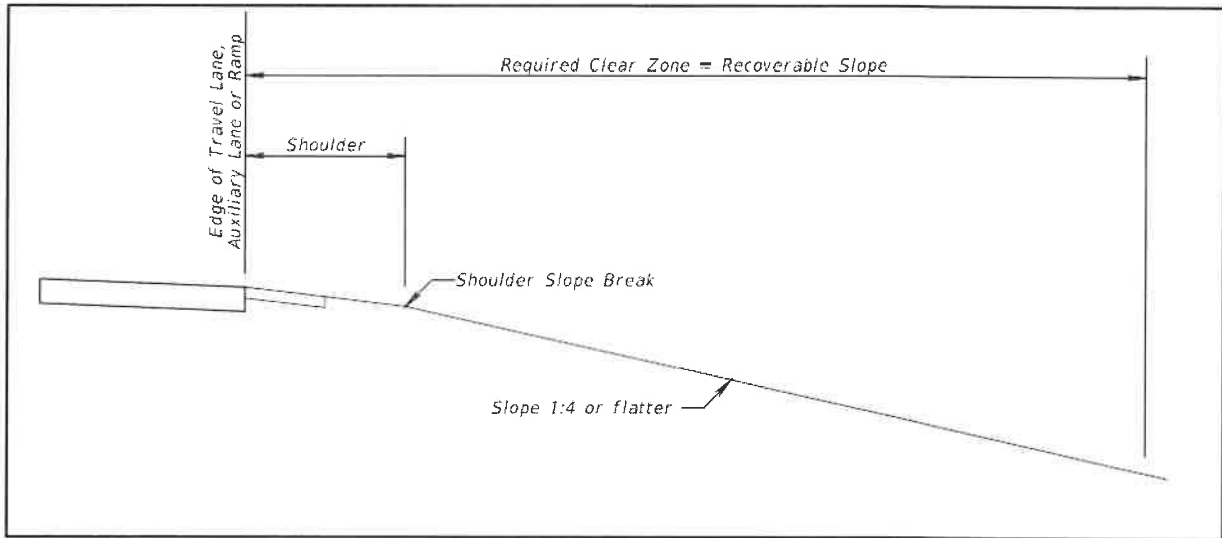
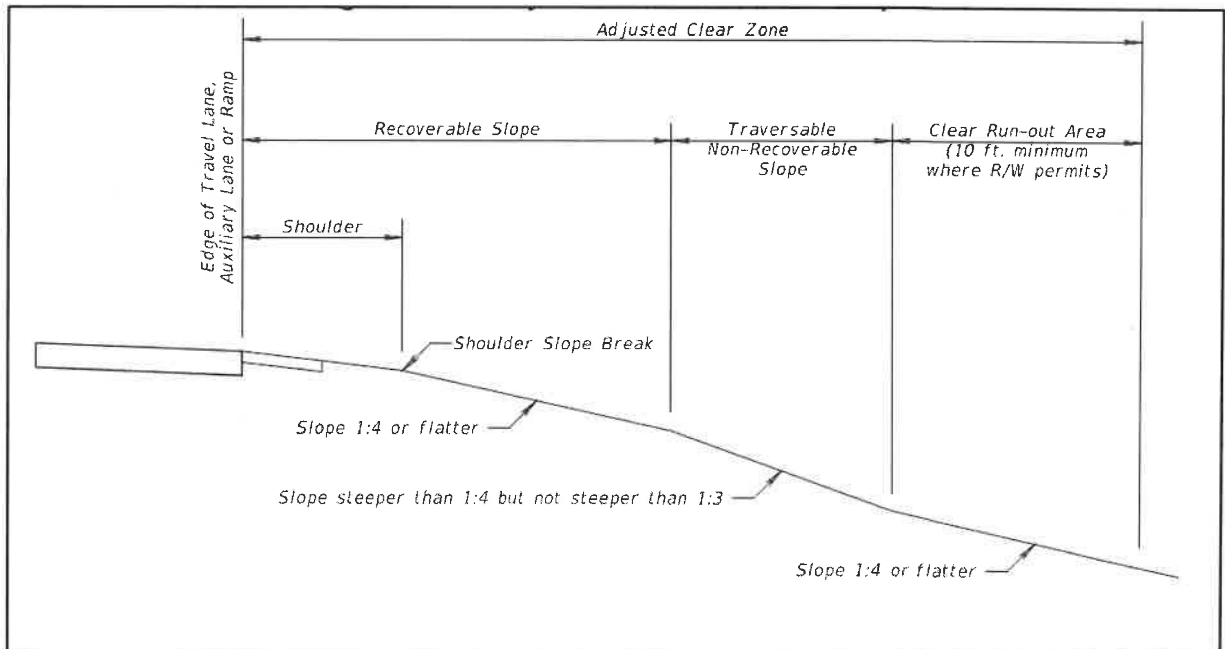
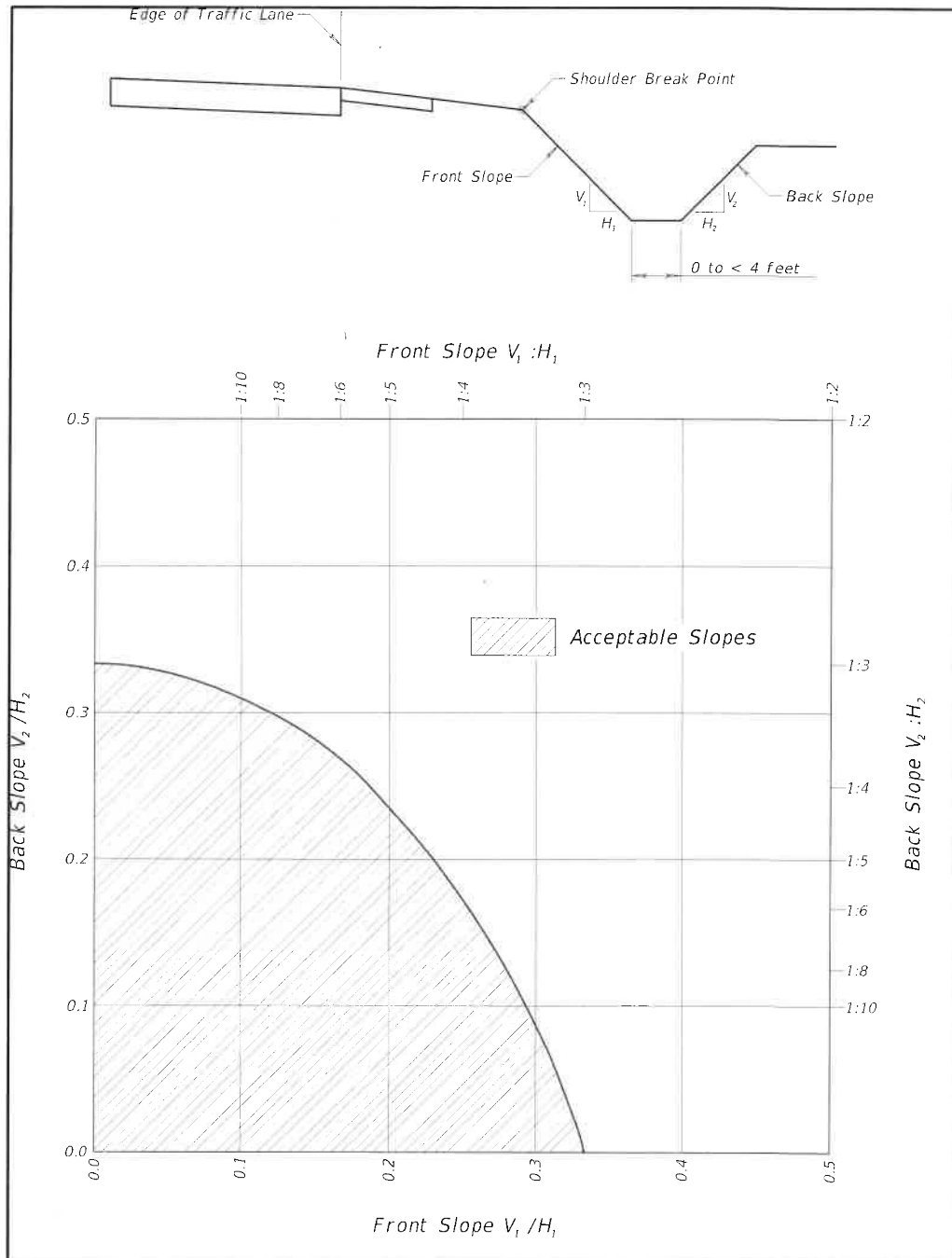


Figure 4 – 3 Adjusted Clear Zone Concept



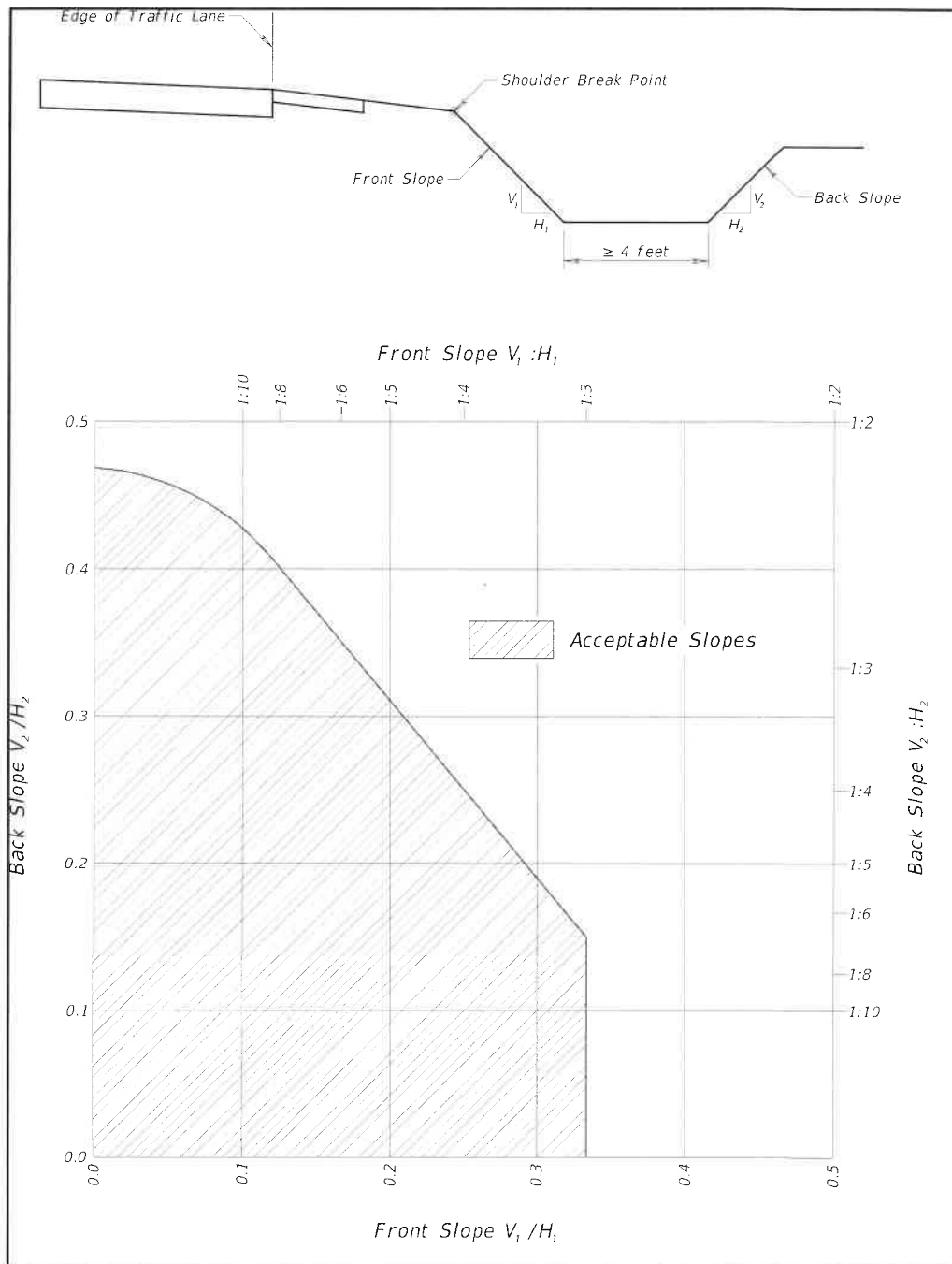
Roadside ditches may be included within the clear zone if properly designed to be traversable. Acceptable cross section slope criteria for roadside ditches within the clear zone is provided in Figure 4 – 4 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width 0 to < 4 Feet and Figure 4 – 5 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width \geq 4 Feet. These roadside ditch configurations are considered traversable.

Figure 4 – 4 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width 0 to < 4 Feet



Source: Figure 3 – 6, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

Figure 4 – 5 Roadside Ditches – Bottom Width \geq 4 Feet



Source: Figure 3 – 6, 2011 AASHTO Roadside Design Guide.

B.1.b Lateral Offset

Lateral offset is the lateral distance from a specified point on the roadway such as the edge of traveled way or face of curb, to a roadside feature or above ground object that is more than 4 inches above grade. Lateral offset requirements apply to all roadways. The requirements for various objects or features are based on:

- Design speed,
- Location; i.e. rural areas or within urban boundary,
- Flush shoulder or with curb,
- Traffic volumes, and
- Lane type; e.g. travel lanes, auxiliary lanes, and ramps.

Lateral Offset requirements are provided in Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset.

Flush shoulder roadways typically have sufficient right of way to provide the required clear zone widths. Therefore, lateral offset requirements for these type roadways are based on providing the clear zone widths provided in Table 4 – 1. Minimum Width of Clear Zone.

On urban curbed roadways with design speeds ≤ 45 mph, lateral offsets based on Table 4 – 1 clear zone requirements should be provided where practical. However, these urban low speed roads are typically located in areas where right of way is restricted (characterized by more dense abutting development, presence of parking, closer spaced intersections and accesses to property, and more bicyclists and pedestrians). The available right of way is typically insufficient to provide the required clear zone widths. Therefore, lateral offset requirements for above ground objects on these roadways are based on offsets needed for normal operation and not on maintaining a clear roadside for errant vehicles.

Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset (feet)

| Roadside Feature | Urban Curbed Roadways Design Speed \leq 45 (mph) | All Other |
|---|--|-------------------|
| Above Ground Objects ¹ | 4 ft. from Face of Curb ² | Clear Zone Width |
| Drop Off Hazards ³ | Clear Zone Width | Clear Zone Width |
| Water Bodies | Clear Zone Width | Clear Zone Width |
| Canal Hazards | See Section B.2.c | See Section B.2.c |
| <p>1. Above ground objects are anything greater than 4 inches in height and are firm and unyielding or do not meet crashworthy or breakaway criteria. For urban curbed areas \leq 45 mph this also includes crashworthy or breakaway objects except those necessary for the safe operation of the roadway.</p> <p>2. May be reduced to 1.5 ft. from Face of Curb on roads functionally classified as Local Streets and on all roads where the 4 ft. minimum offset cannot be reasonably obtained and other alternatives are deemed impractical.</p> <p>3. Drop off hazards are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Any vertical faced structure with a drop off (e.g. retaining wall, wing-wall, etc.) located within the Clear Zone. b. Slopes steeper than 1:3 located within the Clear Zone. c. Drop-offs with significant crash history. | | |

B.2 Drainage Features

Drainage design is an important aspect of the long-term performance of a roadway, and to achieve an effective design, drainage features are necessary in close proximity to travel lanes. These features include ditches, curbs, and drainage structures (e.g. transverse/parallel pipes, culverts, endwalls, wingwalls, and inlets). The placement of these features is to be evaluated as part of roadside safety design. Refer to **Chapter 20 – Drainage** for information regarding proper hydraulic design.

When evaluating the design of roadside topography and drainage features, consider the future maintenance implications of the facility. Routine maintenance or repairs needed to ensure the continued function of the roadway slopes or drainage may lead to long-term expenses and activities, which disrupts traffic flow and exposes maintenance personnel to traffic conditions.

B.2.a Roadside Ditches

Minimum standards for side slopes and bottom widths of roadside ditches and channels within the clear zone are provided in Section B.1.a.

B.2.b Drainage Structures

Drainage structures and their associated end treatments located along the roadside should be implemented using either a traversable design or located outside the required clear zone. The various drainage inlets and pipe end treatments needed for an efficient drainage design typically contain curb inlets, ditch bottom inlets, endwalls, wingwalls, headwalls, flared end sections and/or mitered end sections. If not adequately designed or properly located, these features can create hazardous conditions (e.g. abrupt deceleration or rollovers) for vehicles. For detailed background information concerning traversable designs, refer to the **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide**.

Standard details for drainage structures and end treatments commonly used in Florida are provided in the Department's **Standards Plans Index 425, 430, and 436 Series**. Drainage features shown in the Department's **Standard Plans** have the potential for conflict with a vehicle either departing the roadway or within a commonly traversed section of a roadway. The Department's **Drainage Manual** identifies those standard drainage structures which are acceptable for use within the clear zone.

B.2.c Canals and Water Bodies

Roadside canals and other bodies of water close to the roadway should be eliminated wherever feasible. When not feasible, they should be located outside of the clear zone as shown in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone. If the body of water meets the definition of a canal hazard, additional lateral offset is required for arterial and collector roadways.

A canal hazard is defined as an open ditch parallel to the roadway for a minimum distance of 1,000 feet and with seasonal water depth more than 3 feet for extended periods of time (24 hours or more).

Canal hazard lateral offset is the distance from the edge of travel lane, auxiliary lane or ramp to the top of the canal side slope nearest the road. Minimum required lateral offset distances are as follows:

- Not less than 60 feet for flush shoulder and curbed roadways with design speeds of 50 mph or greater.
- Not less than 50 feet for flush shoulder roadways with design speeds of 45 mph or less.
- Not less than 40 feet for curbed roadways with design speeds of 45 mph or less.

See also Figure 4 – 6 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Flush Shoulders) and Figure 4 – 7 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards (Curb and Curb and Gutter). On new alignments and/or for new canals, greater distances should be provided to accommodate future widening of the roadway.

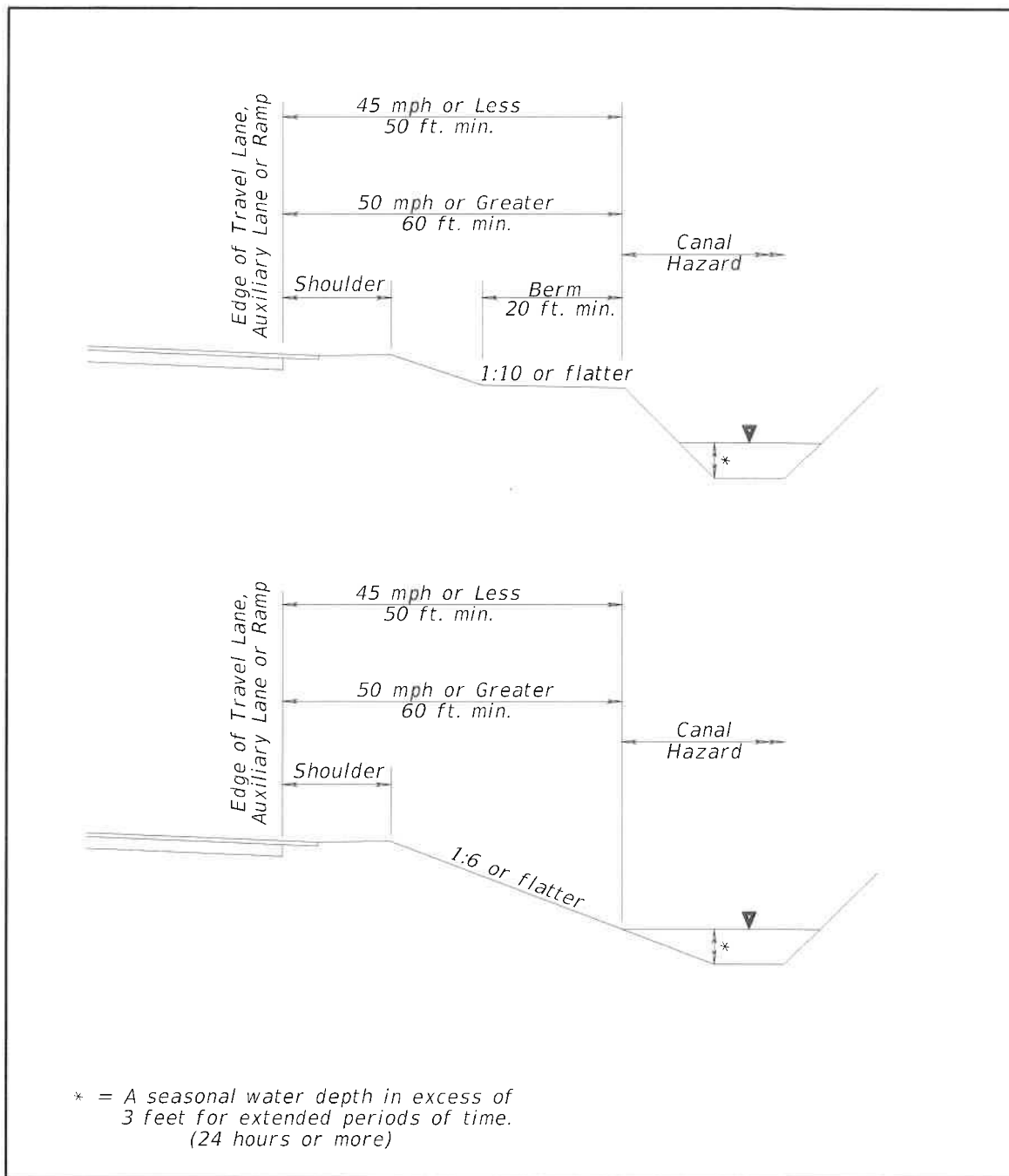
On fill sections, a flat berm (maximum 1:10 slope) no less than 20 feet in width between the toe of the roadway front slope and the top of the canal side slope nearest the roadway should be provided.

When the slope between the roadway and the "extended period of time" water surface is 1:6 or flatter, the minimum distance can be measured from the edge of the travel lane, auxiliary lane, or ramp to the "extended period of time" water surface. A berm is not required.

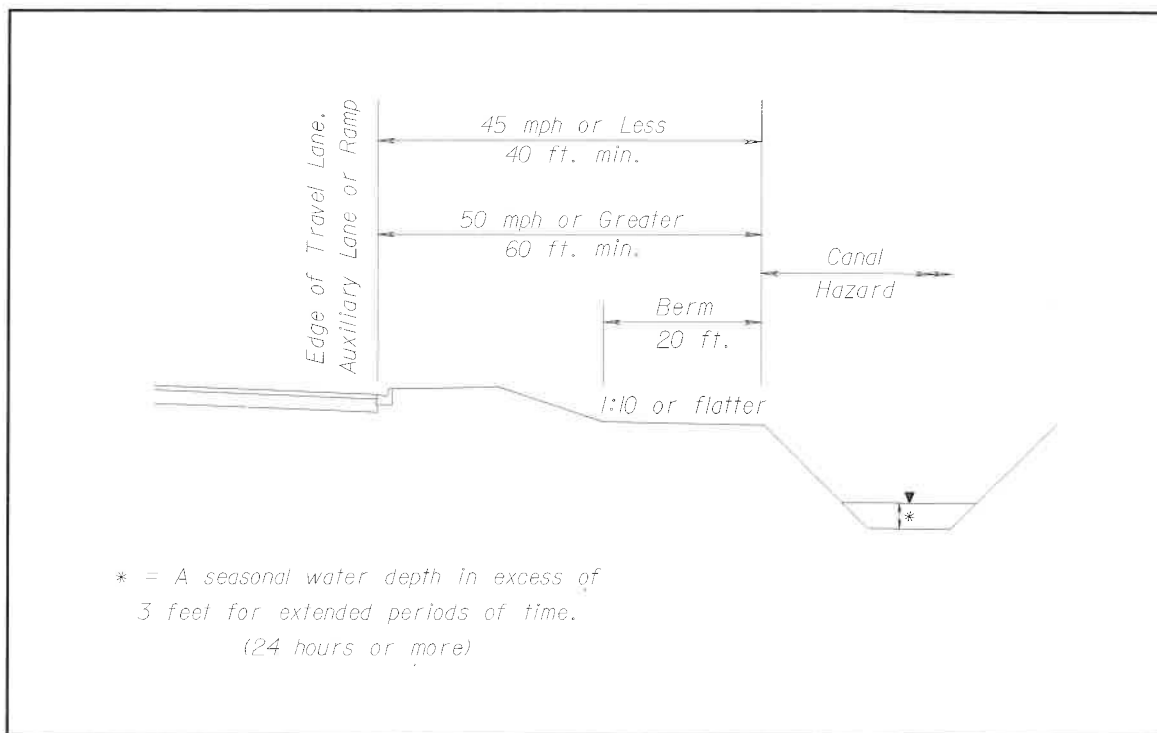
On sections with ditch cuts, a minimum of 20 feet between the toe of the front slope and the top of the canal side slope nearest the roadway should be provided.

When the required minimum lateral offset cannot be met, the canal hazard shall be shielded with a crashworthy roadside barrier. Barriers shall be located as far from the traveled way as practical. When shielding canal hazards the barrier shall be located outside the clear zone where possible. Guardrail shall be located no closer than 6 feet from the canal front slope and high tension cable barrier shall be no closer than 15 feet from the canal front slope.

**Figure 4 – 6 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards
(Flush Shoulders)**



**Figure 4 – 7 Minimum Offsets for Canal Hazards
(Curbed)**



B.2.d Curb

Curbs with closed drainage systems are typically used in urban areas to minimize the amount of right of way needed. Curbs also provide a tangible definition of the roadway limits and delineation of access points. These functions are important in urban areas because of the following typical characteristics:

- Low design speed (Design Speed \leq 45 mph);
- Dense abutting development;
- Closely spaced intersections and accesses to property;
- Higher number of motorized vehicles, bicyclists and pedestrian volumes, and;
- Restricted right of way.

Chapter 3 – Geometric Design provides criteria on the use of curbs. It should be noted that curbs have no redirection capabilities except at very low speeds; less than the lowest design speeds typically used for urban streets. Therefore, curbs are not considered to be effective in shielding a hazard and are not to be used to reduce lateral offset requirements.

FDOT's [Standard Plans, Index 520-001](#) provides standard details for curb shapes commonly used in Florida. Typical applications for urban roadways include Type E and Type F curbs. Both curb types have a sloped face; however, the Type E has a flatter face to allow vehicles to traverse it more easily. Shoulder gutter is also frequently used along roadway fill sections and bridge approaches to prevent excessive runoff down embankment slopes. The Department's **Drainage Manual** may be referenced for direction on the use of shoulder gutter.

Curbs types such as Type E (height 5" or less with a sloping face equal to or flatter than the Type E) may be used in the following cases on high speed roadways. The face of the curb shall be placed no closer to the edge of the traveled way than the required shoulder width.

- High speed multilane divided highways with design speeds of 55 mph and less. For examples see the Department's [Design Manual, Chapter 210 Arterials and Collectors](#).
- Directional Median Openings. For examples see the Department's [Design Manual, Chapter 212 Intersections](#).
- Transit Stops (harmonize with flush shoulder accessible transit stops).

C ROADSIDE SAFETY FEATURES AND CRASH TEST CRITERIA

While a traversable and unobstructed roadside is highly desirable from a safety standpoint, some appurtenances near the traveled way are necessary. Man-made fixed objects that frequently occupy road rights-of-way include traffic signs, traffic signals, roadway lighting, railroad warning devices, intelligent transportation systems (ITS), utility poles, and mailboxes. Other features include safety hardware such as barriers, end treatments and crash cushions which are often necessary to shield errant motorists from a variety of roadside hazards.

These features are in addition to trees and other vegetation often present, either naturally occurring or as part of landscaping. Applicable criteria for each of these features is presented in the following sections. Certain features are required to meet specific crash test criteria involving full scale crash testing.

C.1 Crash Test Criteria

Crash test criteria for roadside safety features has been in existence since 1962. [*NCHRP Report 350, Recommended Procedures for the Safety Performance Evaluation of Highway Features*](#), published in 1993, has been the accepted criteria for safety hardware device testing for many years. Changes have occurred in vehicle design, hardware performance, and testing methodologies, which have led to improvements in crash barrier and roadside design.

More recently, the [*AASHTO Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware \(MASH\)*](#) was published and has superseded *NCHRP Report 350* as the most current criteria. To allow adequate time for the testing and development of features under MASH criteria, safety hardware installed on new and reconstruction projects shall meet *NCHRP Report 350* crash test criteria as a minimum. For projects on the National Highway System, a schedule has been established for implementing requirements for devices meeting MASH criteria. For more information see FHWA's web site for [*Roadway Departure Safety*](#). New and reconstruction projects not on the National Highway System are not required to conform to this implementation schedule, but should comply to the extent practical.

The Department maintains standard details, specifications and approved products for all types of roadside devices commonly used in Florida that meet the required crash test criteria, and are acceptable for use on all public roadways. Non-proprietary, standardized devices are detailed in the Departments [*Standard*](#)

[Plans, Indexes 521, 536, and 544 Series](#). Proprietary products are included on the Department's [Approved Product List \(APL\)](#). These devices address the majority of roadside needs for all roads in Florida. The most current version of the **Standard Plans** and **APL** should be used as the Department maintains and updates these publications as necessary to comply with required implementation dates for changes in crash test criteria.

For cases where a device may be needed that is not covered by the Department's standards and approved products, the Federal Highway Administration (FHWA) maintains lists of eligible crashworthy devices, which can be found on their website for [Roadway Departure Safety](#). In addition, the AASHTO-Associated General Contractors of America (AGC)-American Road and Transportation Builders Association (ARTBA) Joint Committee Task Force 13 report, [A Guide to Standardized Highway Barrier Hardware](#), provides engineering drawings for a multitude of barrier components and systems.

The criteria for crash testing specified in **NCHRP Report 350** and **AASHTO MASH** provides six Test Levels (TL-1 thru TL-6) for the evaluation of roadside hardware suitability. A test level is defined by impact speed and angle of approach, and the type of test vehicle. Test vehicles range in size from a small car to a loaded tractor trailer truck. Each Test Level provides an increasing level of service in ascending numerical order.

Tables 4 – 3 Test Levels for Barriers, End Terminals, Crash Cushions and 4 – 4 Test Levels for Breakaway Devices, Work Zone Traffic Control Devices summarize the vehicle types, vehicle mass, test speeds and impact angles used in testing for each test level. Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4 also show the differences in vehicle mass between MASH and **NCHRP Report 350** criteria for the small car, pickup and single unit truck test vehicles.

In addition to differences in vehicle mass, MASH test criteria incorporated several other changes that differ from **NCHRP Report 350**. For additional information on crash test criteria, refer to the **AASHTO MASH**, **NCHRP Report 350**, the **AASHTO Roadside Design Guide**, and the FHWA web site for **Roadway Departure Safety**.

Table 4 – 3 Test Levels for Barriers, End Terminals, Crash Cushions

| Test Level | Test Vehicle Type | Vehicle Designation and Mass | | Test Conditions MASH | |
|--|---|---|--|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| | | NCHRP 350 (lbs.) | MASH (lbs.) | Impact Speed (mph) | Impact Angle (for Barriers) (degrees) |
| 1 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 31 31 | 25 25 |
| 2 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 44 44 | 25 25 |
| 3 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 62 62 | 25 25 |
| 4 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck Single-Unit Truck | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 8000S 17640 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 10000S 22000 | 62 62 56 | 25 25 15 |
| 5 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck Tractor-Van Trailer | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 36000V 79300 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 36000V 79300 | 62 62 50 | 25 25 15 |
| 6 | Passenger Car Pickup Truck Tractor-Tank Trailer | 820C 1800 2000P 4400 36000V 79300 | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 36000V 79300 | 62 62 50 | 25 25 15 |
| Note: Test Levels 1, 2 and 3 apply to end terminals and crash cushions, while all 6 Test Levels apply to barriers. | | | | | |

Table 4 – 4 Test Levels for Breakaway Devices, Work Zone Traffic Control Devices

| Test Level | Feature | Test Vehicle Type | Vehicle Designation and Mass | | Impact Speeds | | Impact Angle (degrees) |
|------------|--|-------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------------|
| | | | NCHRP 350 (lbs.) | MASH (lbs.) | Low Speed (mph) | High Speed (mph) | |
| 2 | Support Structures and Work Zone Traffic Control Devices | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 Not Required | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 19 19 | 44 44 | 0 – 20 0 – 20 |
| | Breakaway Utility Poles | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 Not Required | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 31 31 | 44 44 | 0 – 20 0 – 20 |
| 3 | Support Structures and Work Zone Traffic Control Devices | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 Not Required | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 19 19 | 62 62 | 0 – 20 0 – 20 |
| | Breakaway Utility Poles | Passenger Car Pickup Truck | 820C 1800 Not Required | 1100C 2420 2270P 5000 | 31 31 | 62 62 | 0 – 20 0 – 20 |

Note: Criteria for Test Levels 2 and 3 are provided for support structures, work zone traffic control devices and breakaway utility poles. Test Level 3 is the basic test level used for most devices.

As noted in Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4, Test Levels 1 through 3 are limited to passenger vehicles while Test Levels 4 through 6 incorporate heavy trucks. The test speeds and impact angles used for testing represent approximately 92.5% of real world crashes. As implied by the information in Tables 4 – 3 and 4 – 4:

1. Test Level 1 devices should be used only on facilities with design speeds 30 mph and less.

2. Test Level 2 devices should be used only on facilities with design speeds 45 mph and less.
3. Test Level 3 through Test Level 6 devices are considered acceptable for all design speeds.
4. Test Level 3 devices are generally considered acceptable for facilities of all types and most roadside conditions.
5. Test Levels 4 through 6 should be considered on facilities with high volumes of heavy trucks and/or where penetration beyond the barrier would result in high risk to the public or surrounding facilities.

For additional information regarding appropriate application of Test Levels refer to the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#).

C.2 Safety Hardware Upgrades

On new construction and reconstruction projects existing obsolete safety hardware shall be upgraded or replaced with hardware meeting crash test criteria as described above.

For existing roadways, highway agencies should upgrade existing highway safety hardware to comply with current crash test criteria either when it becomes damaged beyond repair, or when an individual agency's maintenance policies require an upgrade to the safety hardware.

The Department's [*Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#) provides a list of considerations when investigating the need for upgrading barriers and other hardware. The Department's [*Design Standards*](#) provide standard details for transitioning new barriers to existing barriers. The [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#) also provides guidelines for upgrading hardware.

D SIGNS, SIGNALS, LIGHTING SUPPORTS, UTILITY POLES, TREES AND SIMILAR ROADSIDE FEATURES

D.1 General

This section provides criteria for traffic sign supports, signal supports, lighting supports, utility poles, trees and similar roadside features.

Generally, those roadside appurtenances and features that cannot be removed or located outside the clear zone must meet breakaway criteria to reduce impact severity. For those features located within the clear zone where it is not practical to meet breakaway criteria, shielding may be warranted and shall be considered.

D.2 Performance Requirements for Breakaway Devices

The term breakaway support refers to traffic sign, highway lighting, and other supports that are designed to yield, fracture, or separate when impacted by a vehicle. The release mechanism may be a slip plane, plastic hinge, fracture element, or combination thereof. Crash test criteria applicable to breakaway devices are presented in Section C. Additional requirements for breakaway supports are provided in the [*AASHTO Standard Specifications for Structural Supports for Highway Signs, Luminaries, and Traffic Signals*](#). For a more detailed discussion on breakaway supports, refer to the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#).

See Section C for references that provide additional information and details on crash tested breakaway supports.

D.3 Sign Supports

Traffic signs and sign supports shall meet the requirements provided in the [*Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices \(MUTCD\)*](#) as stated in **Chapter 18 – Signing and Marking**. The *MUTCD* requires all sign supports within the clear zone to be shielded or breakaway. See Section B for clear zone requirements. Only when the use of breakaway supports is not practicable should a traffic barrier or crash cushion be used exclusively to shield sign supports. In addition, sign supports should be located where they are least likely to be hit. Where possible, signs should be placed behind existing roadside barriers beyond the design deflection distance or on existing structures.

The [Department's Standard Plans, Index 700 Series](#) provides details for breakaway supports for single and multi-post ground mounted signs that are acceptable for use within the clear zone. The most current version of these [Standard Plans](#) details should be used as the Department maintains and updates these details as necessary to comply with required implementation dates for changes in crash test criteria.

Overhead signs and cantilever signs require relatively large size support systems. The potential safety consequences of these systems falling necessitate a fixed-base design that cannot be made breakaway. Overhead sign and cantilever sign supports therefore are required to be located outside the clear zone (Section B) or be shielded with a crashworthy barrier (Section E). Where possible, these supports should be located behind traffic barriers shielding nearby overpasses or other existing structures, or the signs should be mounted on the nearby structure. The Department's [Standard Plans, Indexes 700-012 and 700-013](#) provide details and instructions for the design of these systems.

D.4 Traffic Signal Supports

Traffic signal supports commonly used in Florida are fixed base and shall meet the required lateral offset and clear zone criteria provided in Section B. Traffic signal supports should not be located within medians. The Department's [Standard Plans, Indexes 641-010, 649-010, and 649-030](#) provide details and instructions for the design of traffic signal supports.

D.5 Lighting Supports

Lateral offset criteria for lighting supports depend on whether the support is breakaway or fixed base as discussed below. See **Chapter 6 - Lighting** for additional design criteria for lighting.

D.5.a Conventional Lighting

Supports for conventional lighting (heights up to 60 feet) shall be breakaway which are typically frangible bases (cast aluminum transformer bases), slip bases, or frangible couplings (couplers). The Department's [Standard Plans, Indexes 715-001 and 715-002](#) provide further information for breakaway lighting supports which are acceptable for use. As a general rule, a breakaway lighting support will fall near the line of the path of an

impacting vehicle. The mast arm usually rotates and points away from the roadway when resting on the ground. For poles located on the outside of the roadway (not in medians), this action generally results in the pole not falling into other traffic lanes. However, the designer should remain aware that these falling poles may endanger other motorists or bystanders such as pedestrians and bicyclists. The [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#) may be referenced for additional discussion on breakaway lighting supports.

On curbed roadways with design speeds 45 mph or less, breakaway lighting supports shall be located to meet lateral offset requirements provided in Section B, Table 4 – 2.

On flush shoulder roadways, breakaway lighting supports shall be located a minimum of 20 feet from the nearest travel lane, 14 feet from the nearest auxiliary lane or outside the clear zone provided in Section B, Table 4 – 1, whichever is less. The foreslope shall be 1:6 or flatter in cases where supports are located within the clear zone.

Lighting should not be located in medians, except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons.

D.5.b High Mast Lighting

High mast or high-level lighting supports are fixed-base support systems that do not yield or break away on impact. High mast lighting supports shall be located outside the clear zone provided in Section B, Table 4 – 1. High mast lighting shall not be located in medians except in conjunction with barriers that are justified for other reasons. The Department's [*Standard Plans, Index 715-010*](#) provides additional information.

D.6 Utility Poles

Utility poles shall be located to meet lateral offset and clear zone requirements provided in Section B and be located as close as practical to the right of way line. They should be installed per the permitting agency's requirements. The [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide \(2011\)*](#) provides additional discussion and guidance on utility poles.

In accordance with **Section 337.403, F.S.**, existing utility poles must be relocated when **unreasonably** interfering with the "convenient, safe, or continuous use, or the maintenance, improvement, extension, or expansion" of public roads. Utility poles adjacent to road improvement projects, but not directly interfering with construction, should be considered for relocation, to the extent they can be relocated, to achieve the clear zone requirements of Table 3-12. Utility poles that cannot be relocated and will remain within the clear zone, should be approved through the exception process prescribed in **Chapter 14 - Design Exceptions and Variations**.

D.7 Trees

Trees with a diameter greater than 4 inches measured 6 inches above grade shall be located to meet lateral offset and clear zone requirements in Section B, Tables 4 – 1 and 4 – 2. The [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide](#) provides additional discussion and guidance on trees.

D.8 Miscellaneous

D.8.a Fire Hydrants

Most fire hydrants are made of cast iron and are expected to fracture upon impact, however, crash testing meeting current criteria has not been done to verify that designs meet breakaway criteria. For this reason, fire hydrants should be located as far from the traveled way as practical and preferably outside lateral offset/clear zone requirements in Section B, yet where they are still readily accessible to and usable by emergency personnel. Any portion of the hydrant not designed to break away should be within 4 inches of the ground.

D.8.b Railroad Crossing Warning Devices

See **Chapter 7 – Rail-Highway Crossings** for location requirements for railroad crossing warning devices.

D.8.c Mailbox Supports

Mailboxes and their location are subject to US Postal Service requirements. They are often located within the clear zone and pose a potential hazard.

However, with proper design and placement, the severity of impacts with mailboxes can be reduced. To achieve consistency, it is recommended each highway agency adopt regulations for the design and placement of mail boxes within the right of way of public highways. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide (2011)*** provides a model regulation that is compatible with US Postal Service requirements.

The following requirements apply to mailbox installations on public roadways:

No mailbox will be permitted where access is obtained from a freeway or where access is otherwise prohibited by law or regulation. Mailboxes shall be located as follows:

- On the right-hand side of the roadway in the carrier's direction of travel except on one-way streets, where they may be placed on the left-hand side.
- Where a mailbox is located at a driveway entrance, it shall be placed on the far side of the driveway in the carrier's direction of travel.
- Where a mailbox is located at an intersecting road, it shall be located a minimum of 200 feet beyond the center of the intersecting road in the carrier's direction of travel. This distance may be decreased to 100 feet on very low volume roads.
- When a mailbox is installed in the vicinity of an existing guardrail, it should, when practical, be placed behind the guardrail.

The bottom of the box shall be set at a height established by the U. S. Postal Service, usually from 41 to 45 inches above the roadway surface.

On flush shoulder roadways, the roadside face of the box should be offset from the edge of the traveled way a distance no less than the greater of the following:

- 8 feet (where no paved shoulder exists and shoulder cross slope is 10 percent or flatter), or
- width of the shoulder present plus 6 to 8 inches, or
- width of a turnout specified by the jurisdiction plus 6 to 8 inches.

On very low volume flush shoulder roads with low operating speeds the offset may be reduced to 6 feet from the traveled way.

On curbed streets, the roadside face of the mailbox should be set back from the face of the curb at a distance of 6 to 8 inches. On residential streets without curbs or all-weather shoulders that carry low traffic volumes operating at low speeds, the roadside face of the mailbox should be offset between 8 inches and 12 inches behind the edge of the pavement.

Design criteria for the mailbox support structure when located within the clear zone should consist of the following:

- Mailboxes shall be of light sheet metal or plastic construction conforming to the requirements of the U. S. Postal Service. Newspaper delivery boxes shall be of light metal or plastic construction of minimum dimensions suitable for holding a newspaper.
- No more than two mailboxes may be mounted on a support structure unless crash tests have shown the support structure and mailbox arrangement to be safe. However, light-weight newspaper boxes may be mounted below the mailbox on the side of the mailbox support.
- A single 4 inch by 4 inch square or 4 inch diameter wooden post; or metal post, Schedule 40, 2 inch (normal size IPS (external diameter 2-3/8 inch) (wall thickness 0.154 inches) or smaller), embedded no more than 24 inches into the ground, shall be acceptable as a mailbox support. A metal post shall not be fitted with an anchor plate, but it may have an anti-twist device that extends no more than 10 inches below the ground surface.
- Unyielding supports such as heavy metal pipes, concrete posts, brick, stone or other rigid foundation structure or encasement should be avoided.
- The post-to-box attachment details should be of sufficient strength to prevent the box from separating from the post top if the installation is struck by a vehicle. The exact support hardware dimension and design may vary, such as having a two-piece platform bracket or alternative slot-and-hole locations. The product must result in a satisfactory attachment of the mailbox to the post, and all components must fit together properly.

- The minimum spacing between the centers of support posts should be the height of the posts above the ground line. Mailbox support designs not described in this regulation are acceptable if approved by the jurisdiction.

The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 110-200*** and the ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** provide details on hardware, supports and attachment details acceptable for mailboxes located within the clear zone which conform to the above requirements.

D.8.d Bus Benches and Shelters

See ***Chapter 3 – Geometric Design*** for location criteria for bus benches and shelters. Additional criteria are provided in ***Chapter 13 – Public Transit***.

E BARRIERS, END TREATMENTS AND CRASH CUSHIONS

E.1 Roadside Barriers

Roadside barriers are used to shield motorists from roadside hazards and in some cases are used to protect bystanders, pedestrians, cyclists and/or workers from vehicular traffic. In still other cases, roadside barriers are used to protect bridge piers from vehicle impacts. Median barriers are similar to roadside barriers but are designed for vehicles striking either side and are primarily used to separate opposing traffic on a divided highway. Median barriers also may be used on heavily traveled roadways to separate through traffic from local traffic or to separate high occupancy vehicle (HOV) and managed lanes from general-purpose lanes. Barriers are further classified as rigid, semi-rigid and flexible which are discussed in more detail below.

Barrier transition sections are used between adjoining barriers that have significantly different deflection characteristics. For example, a transition section is needed where a semi-rigid guardrail attaches to the approach end of a rigid concrete bridge rail, or when a barrier must be stiffened to shield fixed objects.

Requirements for bridge railings are provided in ***Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures***.

E.2 End Treatments

End treatments include end anchorages, end terminals, and crash cushions. End anchorages are used to anchor a flexible or semi-rigid barrier to the ground to develop its tensile strength during an impact. End anchorages are not designed to be crashworthy for end on impacts. They are typically used on the trailing end of a roadside barrier on one-way roadways, or on the approach or trailing end of a flexible or semi-rigid barrier that is located outside the clear zone or that is shielded by another barrier system. End anchorages are discussed in more detail below.

End terminals are basically crashworthy anchorages. End terminals are used to anchor a flexible or semi-rigid barrier to the ground at the end of a barrier exposed to approaching traffic. Most end terminals are designed for vehicular impacts from only one side of the barrier, however some are designed for median applications where there is potential for impact from either side. End terminals are discussed in more detail below.

E.3 Crash Cushions

Crash cushions, sometimes referred to as impact attenuators, are crashworthy end treatments typically attached at the approach end of median barriers, roadside barriers, bridge railings or other rigid fixed objects, such as bridge piers. Crash cushions may be used in a median, a ramp terminal gore, or other roadside application. Crash cushions are discussed in more detail below.

E.4 Performance Requirements

Roadside barriers, transitions, end terminals, and crash cushions must be crashworthy as determined by full scale crash testing in accordance with specific crash test criteria discussed in Section C. Descriptions of commonly used devices in Florida are described below. Section C also provides references where more information can be found on crashworthy devices.

E.5 Warrants

The determination as to when shielding is warranted for given hazardous roadside feature must be made on a case-by-case basis, and generally requires engineering judgment. It should be noted that the installation of roadside barriers presents a hazard in and of itself, and as such, the designer must analyze whether the installation of a barrier presents a greater risk than the feature it is intended to shield. The analysis should be completed using the [Roadside Safety Analysis Program \(RSAP\)](#) or in accordance with the [AASHTO Highway Safety Manual \(HSM\)](#).

Please see Section A for the considerations to be included when determining when to shield a roadside hazard.

The following hazards located within the clear zone are normally considered more hazardous than a roadside barrier:

E.5.a Above Ground Hazards

Above ground hazards are defined in Section B, Table 4 – 2 Lateral Offset. They include but are not limited to:

1. Bridge piers, abutments and railing ends
2. Parallel retaining walls with protrusions or other potential snagging features
3. Non-breakaway sign and lighting supports
4. Utility Poles
5. Trees greater than 4" in diameter measured 6" above ground.

E.5.b Drop-Off Hazards

Drop-off hazards are defined in Section B, Table 4-2 Lateral Offset.

E.5.c Canals and Water Bodies

Criteria for addressing canal and water body hazards is provided in Section B.2.c.

E.6 Warrants for Median Barriers

Median barriers shall be used on high speed, limited access facilities where the median width is less than the minimum values given in Chapter 3, Geometric Design, Table 3 – 16 Minimum Median Widths. For locations where median widths are equal to or greater than the minimum, median barriers are not normally considered except in special circumstances, such as a location with significant history of cross median crashes. Any determination to use a median barrier on limited access facilities must consider the need for barrier openings for median crossovers that are appropriately spaced to avoid excessive travel distances by emergency vehicles, law enforcement vehicles, and maintenance vehicles. The FDOT Design Manual may be referenced for additional criteria and guidelines for locating and designing median crossovers on limited access facilities.

On high speed divided arterials and collectors, median barriers are not normally used due to a number of factors that are very difficult, if not impractical, to address. Such factors include right-of-way constraints, property access needs, presence of at-grade intersections and driveways, adjacent commercial development, intersection sight distance and barrier end termination. However, provided these factors can be properly addressed, median barriers for these type facilities may be considered where median widths are less than minimum or where justified on the

basis of significant crossover crash history.

See Section E for median barrier types and proper end treatment requirements. The ***AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*** and Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*** and ***Standards Plans*** provide additional information and guidelines on the use of median barriers

E.7 Work Zones and Temporary Barriers

Clear zone widths for work zones, as a minimum, shall be the lessor of clear zone requirements provided in Table 4 – 1 Minimum Width of Clear Zone, Table 4 – 5 Clear Zone Width Requirements for Work Zones, or existing clear zone width. Clear zone widths in work zones are measured from the edge of Traveled Way defined by the Temporary Traffic Control (TTC) Plan.

Table 4 – 5 Clear Zone Width Requirements for Work Zones

| Work Zone Posted Speed (mph) | Travel Lanes & Multilane Ramps (feet) | Auxiliary Lanes & Single Lane Ramps (feet) |
|-------------------------------------|--|---|
| Curbed | | |
| 45 mph or less | 4' Behind Face of Curb | 4' Behind Face of Curb |
| Flush Shoulder | | |
| 30 – 40 | 14 | 10 |
| 45 – 50 | 18 | 10 |
| 55 | 24 | 14 |
| 60 – 70 | 30 | 18 |

When clear zone widths cannot be met, the use of temporary barriers shall be considered. Temporary barriers in work zones can serve several functions:

- Shield edge drop-offs, excavation, roadside structures, falsework for bridges, material storage sites and/or other exposed objects.
- Provide protection for workers.
- Separate two-way traffic.
- Separate pedestrians from vehicular traffic.

The decision to use temporary barriers in a work zone should be based on engineering judgement and analysis. There are many factors, including traffic volume, traffic operating speed, offset, and duration, that affect barrier needs within work zones. The Department's [Standard Plans](#), Index 102-600 Series, [MUTCD](#) and the [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide](#) provide additional information and guidance on the use of temporary barriers in work zones.

E.8 Barrier Types

Roadside barriers are classified as flexible, semi-rigid and rigid depending on their deflection characteristics when impacted. Flexible systems have the greatest deflection characteristics. Given much of the impact energy is dissipated by the deflection of the barrier and lower impact forces are imposed on the vehicle, flexible systems are generally more forgiving than rigid and semi-rigid systems. Rigid barriers, on the other hand, are assumed to exhibit no deflection under impact conditions so crash severity will likely be the highest of the three classifications.

In the following sections are basic descriptions of the barrier types commonly used in Florida for each these classifications. These commonly used barriers are those that are addressed in the Department's [Standard Plans](#) and [Design Manual](#). Those documents should be referenced for additional details and discussion on the proper use of these systems.

The basis for the Department's systems and devices, as well as many other generic and proprietary guardrail systems meeting **NCHRP Report 350** and/or MASH criteria, can be found in the following documents:

- [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide](#)
- [Federal Highway Administration \(FHWA\) Countermeasures that Reduce Crash Severity](#)
- **AASHTO-Associated General Contractors of America (AGC)-American Road and Transportation Builders Association (ARTBA) Joint Committee Task Force 13** report, [A Guide to Standardized Highway Barrier Hardware](#) available at

E.8.a Guardrail

The most commonly used barrier on new construction projects in Florida is the w-beam guardrail system detailed in the Department's [Standard Plans, Index 536-001](#) referenced as "General TL-3 Guardrail". This w-beam guardrail system, sometimes referred to as a strong post guardrail system, is a semi-rigid system, uses posts at 6'-3" spacing, 8" offset blocks, and mid-span splices with a rail height of 2'-1" to center of the panel. This system was developed based on the 31" Midwest Guardrail System (MGS) and meets MASH Test Level 3 criteria. Compatible proprietary components

may be referenced by the 31" height. This system can be used as a roadside barrier or in a double face configuration as a median barrier. Deflection space requirements for this system are provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety***.

The current 31" height system replaces the 27" height system (1'-9" to center of panel) that had been used for many years and still present on roadways throughout Florida. Section C.3 addresses requirements for upgrading existing 27" height systems.

The Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 536-001*** also provides details for a similar w-beam guardrail system referenced as "Low Speed, TL-2 Guardrail", with posts at 12'-6" spacing which meets MASH Test Level 2 criteria. While this TL 2 system may be used on low speed roadways 45 mph or less, it preferably should be used only on roadways with design speeds 35 mph and less to account for the potential for changes in posted speed limits and/or vehicles exceeding the design speed.

To achieve a minimum level of crash performance, guardrail installations shall have a minimum length of 75 feet with design speeds greater than 45 mph.

E.8.b Concrete Barrier

The most commonly used concrete barriers in Florida are detailed in the Department's ***Standard Plans, Index 521-001***. Details are provided for median application, shoulder application and pier protection. Additional information on these barriers is provided in the Department's ***Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety***.

The Department's 32" height F-Shape concrete barrier wall system that has been in use for many years meets ***NCHRP Report 350*** Test Level 4 criteria and MASH Test Level 3 criteria. The Department is replacing this 32" F-Shape system with a 38" height single slope concrete barrier system which meets MASH Test Level 4 criteria. In addition to improved crash test performance, the single slope face provides for simpler construction.

While shielding bridge piers to protect motorists from a hazard within the clear zone is often necessary, some bridge piers may need shielding for protection from damage due to design limitations (i.e. piers not designed for vehicular collision forces). Coordination with the Structural Engineer of Record is required to determine if pier protection is warranted. The Department's [Standard Plans, Index 521-002](#) provides details for crashworthy Pier Protection barriers and the [Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety](#) provides a process for determining the appropriate level of pier protection. As with median and shoulder concrete barrier walls, the Department is replacing the F-Shape pier protection barriers that have been in use for several years with single slope face systems.

E.8.c High Tension Cable Barrier

There are a variety of crash tested flexible barrier systems using w-beam and cable, but they historically have not been in common use in Florida. In recent years several proprietary high-tension cable barrier (HTCB) systems have been developed that meet NCHRP Report 350 and MASH criteria. These systems are installed with a significantly greater tension in the cables than the generic low-tension systems that have been used in some states for many years. High tension cable barrier systems may be used for both median and roadside application. Deflection space requirements are dependent on the system, system length and post spacing, and are significantly greater than semi-rigid systems.

High tension cable barrier has shown to have several advantages over other types of flexible barrier systems. One advantage is they tend to result in less damage when impacted. Another is that certain systems have been tested for use on slopes as steep as 1:4. Still another advantage is that in many cases, the cables remain at the proper height after an impact that damages several posts. While no manufacturer claims their barrier remains functional in this condition, there is the potential that this offers a residual safety value under certain crash conditions. Posts are typically lightweight and can be installed in cast or driven sockets in the ground to facilitate removal and replacement. One disadvantage is that each vendor uses a different post design and cable arrangement, and therefore posts are not interchangeable between systems manufactured by different vendors.

The Department has used High Tension Cable Barrier (HTCB) in selected locations and continues to install these systems using the Department's

[Developmental Design Standards and Developmental Specifications \(DDS\)](#) process. Detailed information on the usage requirements and design criteria of HTCB can be found on the [Department's DDS](#) website.

It includes the following:

- ***Developmental Standard Plans Instructions D 540-001***
- ***Developmental Standard Plans Index D 540-001***
- ***Developmental Specification, Dev540***

E.8.d Temporary Barrier

As stated in Section E.5.e, temporary barriers are used primarily in work zones for several purposes. The most commonly used temporary barriers in Florida are those adopted for use by FDOT. The department's temporary barriers include:

[Low Profile Barrier – Standard Plans, Index 102-120](#) (TL-2, NCHRP 350)

[Type K Barrier – Standard Plans, Index 102-110](#) (TL-3, NCHRP 350)

[Proprietary Temporary Barrier – Standards Plans, Index 102-100](#) and the [Approved Products List \(APL\)](#) (TL-2 & TL-3, NCHRP 350)

Additional information on the proper use of these barriers is provided in the Department's [Design Manual](#) and the Vendor drawings on the [Approved Products List](#).

Additional information on temporary barrier systems meeting [NCHRP Report 350](#) and/or MASH criteria can be found in the [Manual for Assessing Safety Hardware](#) and the [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide](#).

E.8.e Selection Guidelines

The evaluation of numerous factors is required to ensure that the appropriate barrier type is selected for a given application. Consideration should be given to the following factors when evaluating each site:

- Barrier placement requirements (see Section E.6.f)
- Traffic characteristics (e.g. vehicle types/percentages, volume, and growth)
- Site characteristics (e.g. terrain, alignment, geometry, access facility type, access locations, design speed, etc.)
- Expected frequency of impacts
- Initial and replacement/repair costs
- Ease of maintenance
- Exposure of workers when conducting repairs/maintenance
- Aesthetics

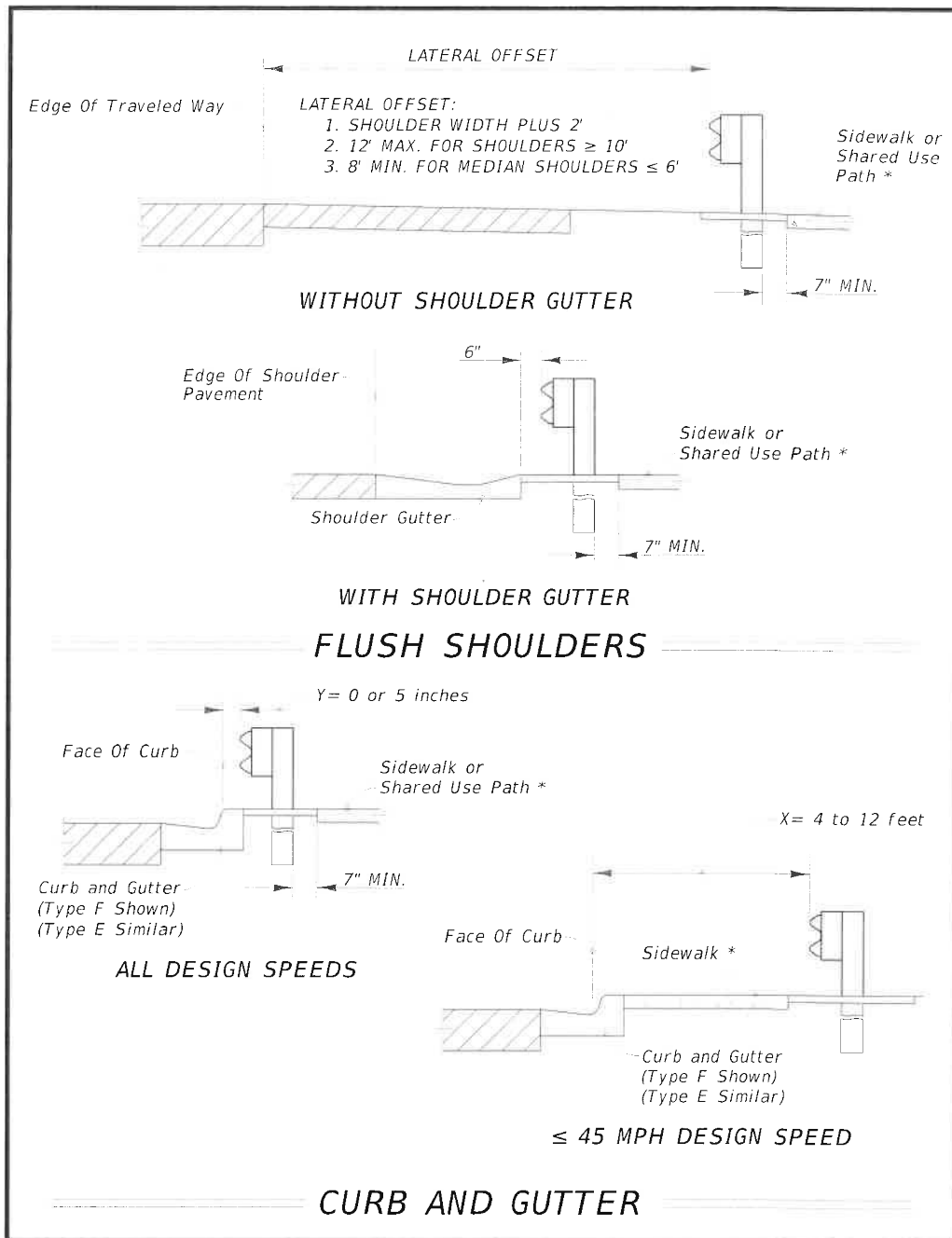
For additional information about considerations for barrier selections refer to the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#). Barrier type selection decisions and warrants should be documented.

E.8.f Placement

E.8.f.1 Barrier Offsets

Roadside barriers should be offset as far from the travel lanes as practical with consideration for maintaining the proper performance of the barrier. For the barriers described above see the Department's [*Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#) and [*Standard Plans*](#) for proper barrier placement. Figure 4 – 8 Location of Guardrail provides information on the offset of guardrail on curbed and flush shoulder roadways.

Figure 4 – 8 Location of Guardrail



* When a sidewalk is present or planned. See Chapter 8 – Pedestrian Facilities and Chapter 9 – Bicycle Facilities for criteria for sidewalks and shared use paths (e.g. width of facility plus clear, graded areas adjacent to the path or sidewalk).

E.8.f.2 Deflection Space and Zone of Intrusion

In addition to travel lane lateral offset considerations, an adequate setback must be provided behind the barrier to ensure proper function. For flexible and semi-rigid barriers, the setback is based on deflection tolerances and is required to prevent the barrier from contacting aboveground objects.

For rigid barriers, the setback is required to keep the area above and behind the barrier face free of obstructions that could penetrate or damage the vehicle compartment. This requirement is based on the Zone of Intrusion (ZOI) concept as described in the [AASHTO Roadside Design Guide](#).

These requirements do not apply to devices located within the setback distances detailed in the Department's [Standard Plans](#) (e.g. pedestrian/bicycle railing, fencing, noise walls, etc.).

E.8.f.3 Grading

The terrain effects between the traveled way and a barrier can have a significant impact on whether a barrier will perform as intended. Proper grading around a barrier will ensure that as a vehicle approaches a barrier its suspension is not dramatically affected, causing the vehicle to underride or override a barrier.

E.8.f.4 Curbs

As with grading, the presence of curb in combination with barriers deserves special attention. A vehicle which traverses a curb prior to impact may override the barrier if it is partially airborne at the moment of impact. Conversely, the vehicle may "submarine" under the rail element of a guardrail system and snag on the support posts if it strikes the barrier too low.

E.8.f.5 Flare Rate

A flared roadside barrier is when it is not parallel to the edge of the traveled way. A flared barrier may be necessary for several reasons:

- To locate the barrier terminal farther from the roadway
- To minimize a driver's reaction to an obstacle near the road by gradually introducing a parallel barrier installation
- To transition a roadside barrier to an obstacle nearer the roadway such as a bridge parapet or railing
- To reduce the total length barrier needed.
- To reduce the potential for barrier and terminal impacts and provide additional roadside space for an errant motorist to recover.

A concern with flaring a section of roadside barrier is that the greater the flare rate, the higher the angle at which the barrier can be hit. As the angle of impact increases, the crash severity increases, particularly for rigid and semi-rigid barrier systems. Another disadvantage to flaring a barrier installation is the increased likelihood that a vehicle will be redirected back into or across the roadway following an impact.

For the barriers described above, see the Department's [*Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#) for acceptable flare rates. Additional information on flare rates are provided in the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#).

E.8.f.6 Length of Need

The length of need for a particular barrier type is calculated based on several factors including the length of the hazard, the lateral area of concern, run out length and other factors. Length of need must consider traffic from both directions.

A spreadsheet tool for calculating length of need is provided on the Department's [*Standard Plans*](#) web page, adjacent to [*Index 536-001*](#) in the *Design Tools* column. Additional information on length of need is provided in the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#).

E.8.g Barrier Transitions

Guardrail transitions are necessary whenever standard W-Beam guardrail converges with rigid barriers. The purpose of the transition is to provide a gradual stiffening of the overall approach to a rigid barrier so that vehicular pocketing, snagging, or penetration is reduced or avoided at any position along the transition. Guardrail transitions must include sound structural connections, nested panels and additional posts for increased stiffness. The Department's [*Standard Plans*](#) provide details for several transitions for both permanent and rigid barriers that meet MASH criteria. Additional information on transitions is provided in the Department's [*Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#) and the [*AASHTO Roadside Design Guide*](#).

E.8.h Attachments to Barriers

Attachments to barriers such as signs, light poles, and other objects will affect crash performance and should be avoided where practical. Attachments not meeting the requirements discussed in Section E.6.f Placement, should meet crash test criteria. See the [*Department's Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#) for additional information on attachments to barriers.

E.9 End Treatments and Crash Cushions

As previously discussed, end treatments include end anchorages, end terminals, and crash cushions. Details for end treatments for each barrier type described above are detailed in the Department's [*Standard Plans*](#) and the [*Approved Products List \(APL\)*](#).

E.9.a End Treatments for Guardrail

End treatments for guardrail are categorized as follows:

1. Approach end terminals – required for guardrail ends within the clear zone of approaching traffic. The Department's guardrail approach end terminals are proprietary devices listed on the [*APL*](#). Approach end terminals are classified by Test Level (TL-2 for Design Speeds \leq 45 mph or TL-3, which is acceptable for all Design Speeds) and as follows:

- a. Flared – preferred terminal for locations where sufficient space is available to offset barrier end from approaching traffic.
 - b. Parallel – use only when sufficient space is not available for a flared terminal.
 - c. Double Face – preferred end treatment for double faced guardrail installations.
2. Crash Cushions – See Section E.7.e.
 3. Trailing End Anchorages (Type II) – required for anchoring of the trailing ends of guardrail. Trailing End Anchorages are considered non-crashworthy as an approach end treatment, and are not permitted as guardrail end treatments on the approach end within the Clear Zone, unless shielded by another run of barrier. The Department's Type II Trailing End Anchorage, is detailed in the Standard Plans, Index 536-001 .

Additional information on guardrail end treatments is provided in the Department's [*Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety*](#).

E.9.b End Treatments for Rigid Barrier

Rigid Barrier ends must be terminated by either transitioning into another barrier system (e.g. guardrail), or by shielding with a Crash Cushion. Details are provided in the Department's [*Standard Plans, Index 521-001*](#). Treatment of the trailing end of rigid barriers is not required unless additional hazards exist beyond the rigid barrier or the barrier is within the clear zone of opposing traffic.

E.9.c End Treatments for High Tension Cable Barrier (HTCB)

End treatments for high tension cable barrier are vendor specific. For additional information regarding the end treatment of HTCB, refer to the Department's developmental design standards discussed above.

E.9.d End Treatments for Temporary Barrier

Details for end treatments for the Department's Temporary Barrier are provided in the Department's [*Standard Plans*](#) and include:

1. Connecting to an existing barrier. Smooth, structural connections are required. Information on connections can be found in the Department's [Standard Plans, Indexes 521-001 and 102-110](#) and [APL](#).
2. Shield end with a crash cushion as detailed in the [Standard Plans, Index 102 Series](#) or [APL](#) for the specific type of Temporary Barrier (i.e. portable concrete barrier, steel, or water filled).
3. Attaching or Transitioning to a crashworthy end treatment as described above.
4. Flaring outside of the Work Zone Clear Zone.

E.9.e Crash Cushions

Crash cushions are classified based on Test Level and Design Speed which is shown for each system on each vendor's respective drawings posted on the Department's [APL](#).

The design of a crash cushion system must not create a hazard to opposing traffic. The APL drawings provide details for transitions for optional barrier types with and without bi-directional traffic.

An impacting vehicle should strike the systems at normal height, with the vehicle's suspension system neither collapsed nor extended. Therefore, the terrain surrounding crash cushions must be relatively flat (i.e. 1:10 or flatter) in advance of and along the entire design length of the system. Curbs should not be located within the approach area of a crash cushion.

The Department's [Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety](#) provides additional information on permanent and temporary crash cushions.

F BRIDGE RAILS

See [Chapter 17 - Bridges and Other Structures](#) for requirements for bridge rails. The Department's [Design Manual, Chapter 215 Roadside Safety](#) may be referenced for additional information and typical applications.

G REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES

The following is a list of publications that may be referenced for further guidance:

- AASHTO Roadside Design Guide
<https://bookstore.transportation.org/>
- Task Force 13 Guide to Standardized Roadside Safety Hardware
<http://www.tf13.org/Guides/>
- FHWA Web Site
http://safety.fhwa.dot.gov/roadway_dept/
- FDOT Design Manual
<http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/FDM/>
- FDOT Standard Plans for Road and Bridge Construction (Standard Plans)
<http://www.fdot.gov/design/standardplans/>
- FDOT Structures Design Guidelines
<http://www.fdot.gov/structures/StructuresManual/CurrentRelease/StructuresManual.shtm>
- FDOT Drainage Manual, January 2018
<http://www.fdot.gov/roadway/Drainage/ManualsandHandbooks.shtm>
- Florida Strategic Highway Safety Plan 2016
<http://www.fdot.gov/safety/SHSP2016/SHSP-2012.shtm>

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

| | | |
|-------|--|-----|
| A | INTRODUCTION | 5-1 |
| B | PAVEMENT DESIGN | 5-2 |
| B.1 | Pavement Type Selection | 5-2 |
| B.1.a | Unpaved Roadway Material Selection | 5-2 |
| B.2 | Structural Design | 5-2 |
| B.3 | Skid Resistance | 5-3 |
| B.4 | Drainage | 5-4 |
| B.4.a | Unpaved Roadway Drainage | 5-4 |
| B.5 | Shoulder Treatment | 5-4 |
| C | PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION | 5-7 |

FIGURES

| | | |
|--------------|---|-----|
| Figure 5 – 1 | Two Lane Road with Safety Edge | 5-5 |
| Figure 5 – 2 | Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders) | 5-6 |

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 5

PAVEMENT DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

A INTRODUCTION

The function of the pavement or roadway surface is to provide a safe and efficient travel path for vehicles using the street or highway. The pavement should provide a good riding surface with a minimum amount of distraction to the driver. The pavement friction characteristics should be such that adequate longitudinal and lateral forces between the vehicle tires and the pavement can be developed to allow a margin of safety for required vehicle maneuvers. These characteristics should be provided at the highest reasonable level for the expected pavement surface, weather conditions, and the anticipated operational characteristics of the facility. Resurfacing of the existing pavement is discussed and included under **Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing** of this manual.

In order for the pavement to perform its function properly, the following objectives shall be considered in the design and construction of the pavement:

- Provide sufficient pavement structure and the proper pavement material strength to prevent pavement distress prior to the end of the design period.
- Develop and maintain adequate skid resistance qualities to allow for safe execution of braking, cornering, accelerating, and other vehicle maneuvers.
- Provide drainage to promote quick drying and to reduce the likelihood of hydroplaning and splashing.
- Provide a Safety Edge treatment adjacent to the travel lane on roadways without curb or paved shoulders and with posted speed 45 mph or greater.

B PAVEMENT DESIGN

B.1 Pavement Type Selection

For new construction and major reconstruction projects, the designer should determine the type of pavement to be constructed utilizing formal analysis of existing and anticipated conditions. High volume roadways where a significant amount of truck traffic (>10%) exists may warrant consideration for special asphalt pavement designs and for rigid pavement designs. The Department has a documented procedure patterned after the 1993 [*AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, Appendix B*](#). This procedure may be found in the Department's [*Pavement Type Selection Manual \(2013\)*](#).

B.1.a Unpaved Roadway Material Selection

The material chosen should be locally available when possible. Frequency of grading and replacement of material from loss due to erosion should be evaluated. A life cycle economic analysis should be performed to determine suitable material type. For example: Reclaimed asphalt pavements (RAP) from milling operations provide for a suitable all weather material and can be considered for unpaved roads.

The material chosen should exhibit low potential for losses due to wind, traffic and water erosion. EPA's publication AP-42 contains methodology for estimating the dust generation potential for unpaved road surfaces. Proper gradation of the chosen material is critical for its success. Designers should consider flexible or rigid pavements where runoff from unpaved roads may impact surface waters.

Designers may consult with AASHTO's [*Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Local Roads \(ADT ≤ 400\), 2001*](#) and FHWA's [*Gravel Roads Construction and Maintenance Guide, August 2015*](#) for further guidance regarding material selection.

B.2 Structural Design

The pavement shall be designed and constructed so the required surface texture is maintained and its structure retains an adequate level of serviceability for the design period. The strength of the pavement materials shall be sufficient to

maintain the desired roadway cross section without the formation of ruts or other depressions which would impede drainage. Subgrade strength and subgrade drainage are major factors to be considered in pavement design. Where high ground water conditions are present, adequate clearance to the bottom of the pavement base is necessary for good pavement performance and to achieve the required compaction and stability during construction operations.

The Department's pavement design manuals, including the [*Flexible Pavement Design Manual, January 2018*](#) and [*Rigid Pavement Design Manual, January 2018*](#), are recommended as a guide for both flexible and rigid pavement design. Other design procedures are available including the [*AASHTO Guide for Design of Pavement Structures, 1993*](#); and procedures which have been developed by the Portland Cement Association, the American Concrete Pavement Association, and the Asphalt Institute. The selection of the design procedure and the development of the design data must be managed by professional personnel competent to make these evaluations.

B.3 Skid Resistance

Pavements shall be designed and constructed to maintain adequate skid resistance for as long a period as the available materials, technology, and economic restraints will permit, thus eliminating cost and hazardous maintenance operations.

The results of relevant experience and testing (i.e., tests conducted by the Department's Materials Office) should be used in the selection of aggregate and other materials, the pavement mix design, the method of placement, and the techniques used for finishing the pavement surface. The design mixes should be monitored by continuous field testing during construction. Changes to the design mix or construction procedures must be made by qualified pavement designers and laboratory personnel ONLY.

The use of transverse grooving in concrete pavements frequently improves the wet weather skid resistance and decreases the likelihood of hydroplaning. This technique should be considered for locations requiring frequent vehicle maneuvers (curves, intersections, etc.) or where heavy traffic volumes or high speeds will be encountered. The depth, width, and spacing of the grooves should be such that control of the vehicle is not hindered.

B.4 Drainage

Adequate drainage of the roadway and shoulder surfaces should be provided. Factors involved in the general pavement drainage pattern include: pavement longitudinal and cross slopes, shoulder slopes and surface texture, curb placement, and the location and design of collection structures. The selection of pavement cross slopes should receive particular attention to achieve the proper balance between drainage requirements and vehicle operating requirements. The use of curbs or other drainage controls adjacent to the roadway surface should be avoided, particularly on high speed facilities. Specific requirements for cross slopes and curb placement are given in **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design**.

B.4.a Unpaved Roadway Drainage

Properly graded unpaved roadways require less maintenance and suffer less material loss. Designers should strive to provide adequate cross slope, shoulder and swale profiles wherever possible. Typical cross slopes should be 2% with 1.5% minimum. During maintenance grading, the operator should ensure that the shoulder does not become higher than the travel lane edge to prevent ponding of water on the roadway.

Designers may consult with AASHTO's publication [Guidelines for Geometric Design of Very Low-Volume Roads \(ADT < 400\), 2001](#) and FHWA's [Gravel Roads Construction & Maintenance Guide, August 2015](#) for further guidance regarding proper profiles for unpaved roads.

B.5 Shoulder Treatment

The primary function of the shoulder is to provide an alternate travel path for vehicles in an emergency situation. Shoulders should be capable of providing a safe path for vehicles traveling at roadway speed, and should be designed and constructed to provide a firm and uniform surface capable of supporting vehicles in distress. Particular attention shall be given to provide a smooth transition from pavement to shoulder.

Safety Edge is a technology that mitigates vertical drop offs. The Safety Edge provides a higher probability of a vehicle returning safely to the travel lane when it drifts off the pavement. The wedge shape eliminates tire scrubbing and improves vehicle stability as it crosses a drop-off. Details for the Safety Edge are included in Figures 5 – 1 Two Lane Road with Safety Edge and 5 – 2 Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders).

Figure 5 – 1
Two Lane Road with Safety Edge

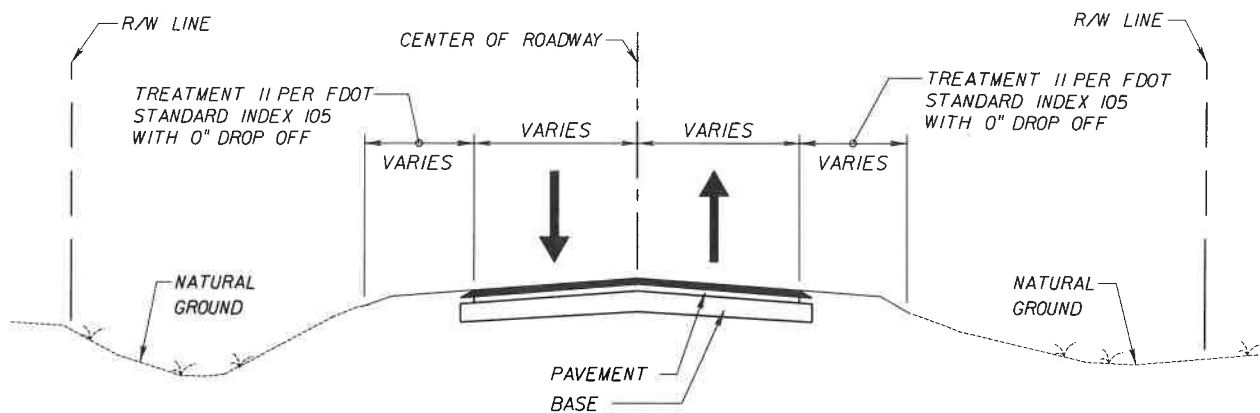
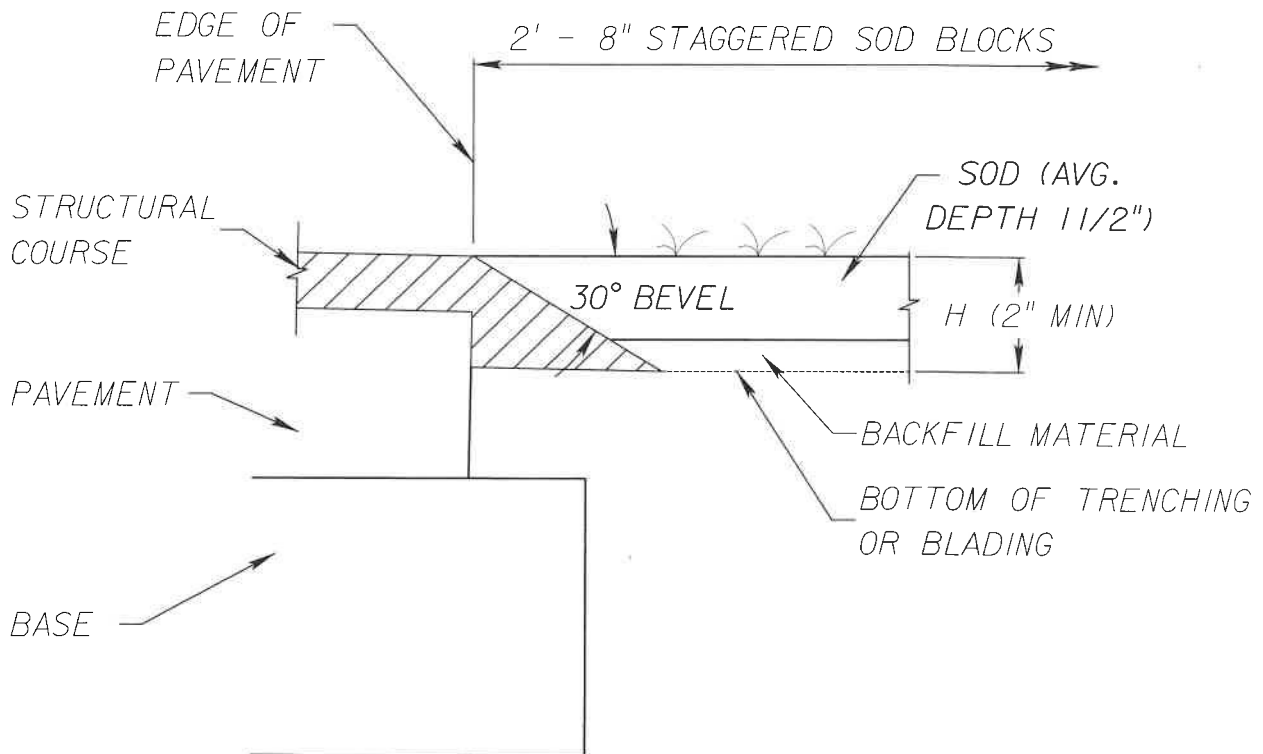


Figure 5 – 2
Safety Edge Detail (No Paved Shoulders)



FOR $2'' \leq H \leq 5''$

*SINGLE LIFT
SAFETY EDGE DETAIL*

Shoulder pavement may be provided to improve drainage of the roadway, to serve bicycles, pedestrians and transit users, and to minimize shoulder maintenance.

C PAVEMENT CONSTRUCTION

A regular program of inspection and evaluation should be conducted to ensure the pavement criteria are satisfied during the construction process. Any regular inspection program should include the following:

- The use of standard test procedures, such as AASHTO and the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
- The use of qualified personnel to perform testing and inspection.
- The use of an independent assurance procedure to validate the program.

After construction, the pavement surface shall be inspected to determine the required surface texture was achieved and the surface has the specified slopes. Spot checking skid resistance by approved methods should be considered. Periodic reinspection should be undertaken in conformance with the guidelines described in **Chapter 10 – Maintenance and Resurfacing**.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 6

LIGHTING

| | | |
|---|--|------|
| A | INTRODUCTION | 6-1 |
| B | OBJECTIVES | 6-2 |
| C | WARRANTING CONDITIONS..... | 6-3 |
| | C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History | 6-3 |
| | C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation | 6-3 |
| | C.3 General Criteria..... | 6-4 |
| D | TYPES OF LUMINAIRES..... | 6-5 |
| E | LIGHTING DESIGN TECHNIQUES | 6-5 |
| | E.1 Illuminance..... | 6-7 |
| | E.2 Luminance | 6-7 |
| | E.3 Lighting Design Levels..... | 6-8 |
| F | UNIFORMITY OF ILLUMINATION | 6-11 |
| G | UNDERPASSES AND OVERPASSES | 6-12 |
| | G.1 Daytime Lighting | 6-12 |
| | G.2 Night Lighting | 6-12 |
| H | DECORATIVE ROADWAY LIGHTING..... | 6-13 |
| I | ADAPTIVE LIGHTING..... | 6-13 |
| J | OVERHEAD SIGN LIGHTING..... | 6-14 |
| K | ROUNDBABOUTS..... | 6-14 |
| L | MIDBLOCK CROSSWALKS..... | 6-15 |
| M | MAINTENANCE | 6-16 |
| N | LIGHT POLES | 6-16 |
| O | REFERENCES FOR INFORMATIONAL PURPOSES | 6-17 |

TABLES

| | | |
|-------------|--|------|
| Table 6 – 1 | Road Surface Classifications | 6-8 |
| Table 6 – 2 | Illuminance and Luminance Design Values | 6-9 |
| Table 6 – 3 | Illuminance and Luminance Levels for Sign Lighting | 6-14 |

FIGURES

| | | |
|--------------|---|------|
| Figure 6 – 1 | Illuminance and Luminance | 6-6 |
| Figure 6 – 2 | Horizontal and Vertical Illuminance for Mid-Block Crosswalk | 6-15 |

CHAPTER 6

LIGHTING

A INTRODUCTION

The major reason for lighting streets and highways is to improve safety for vehicular and pedestrian traffic. Improvements in sight distance and reduction of confusion and distraction for night time driving can reduce the hazard potential on streets and highways. There is evidence indicating that highway lighting will produce an increase in highway capacity as well as improve the economic, safety, and aesthetic characteristics of highways.

Experience and technical improvements have resulted in improved design of lighting for streets and highways. Photometric data provide a basis for calculation of the illumination at any point for various combinations of selected luminaire types, heights, and locations. Lighting engineers can develop lighting systems that will comply with the requirements for level and uniformity of illumination; however, some uncertainties preclude the adoption of rigid design standards. Among these uncertainties is the lack of understanding of driver response and behavior under various lighting conditions. The design of lighting for new streets and highways, as well as improvements on existing facilities, should be accompanied by careful consideration of the variables involved in driver behavior and problems peculiar to particular locations.

Rights of way with pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways adjacent to the roadway should first address lighting requirements for the roadway to assure it is continuously illuminated. Additional lighting for a sidewalk or shared use path maybe necessary if it is substantially set back from the roadway, at the discretion of the responsible/maintaining agency. Pedestrian sidewalks and/or bikeways should not be illuminated in lieu of lighting the adjacent roadway to avoid glare or potential lighting distractions to drivers.

See **Chapter 17 – Bridges and Other Structures, Section C.6** for structural requirements for lighting.

B OBJECTIVES

The objective for providing lighting is to improve the safety of roadways, sidewalks, and shared use paths and visibility of signs for road users (drivers, pedestrians, and bicyclists). The achievement of this objective will be aided by meeting these specific goals:

- Provide an improved view of the general highway geometry and the adjacent environment.
- Increase the sight distance to improve response to hazards and decision points.
- Eliminate "blind" spots unique to travel at night or in low light conditions.
- Provide a clearer view of the general situation during police, emergency, maintenance, and construction operations.
- Provide assistance in roadway, sidewalk or path delineation, particularly in the presence of confusing background lighting (i.e., surrounding street and other area lighting confuses the driver on an unlighted street or highway).
- Minimize glare that is discomforting or disabling.
- Reduce abrupt changes in light intensity.
- Avoid the introduction of roadside hazards resulting from improper placement of light poles, pull boxes, etc. (as covered under **Chapter 3 – Geometric Design** and **Chapter 4 – Roadside Design**).

C WARRANTING CONDITIONS

Although precise warrants for the provision of roadway lighting are difficult to determine, criteria for lighting is established and should be followed for new and reconstruction projects and for improvement of existing facilities. The following locations should be considered as a basis for warranting roadway lighting:

C.1 Criteria Based Upon Crash History

- Locations that, by a crash investigation program, have been shown to be hazardous due to inadequate lighting.
- Locations where the night/day ratio of serious crashes is higher than the average of similar locations.
- Specific locations that have a significant number of night time crashes and where a large percentage of these night time crashes result in injuries or fatalities.

C.2 Criteria Based Upon Analysis and Investigation

- Locations requiring a rapid sequence of decisions by the road user.
- Locations where night sight distance problems exist, with consideration to headlight limitations (i.e., where vertical and horizontal curvature adversely affect illumination by headlamps).
- Locations having discomforting or disabling glare.
- Locations where background lighting exists, particularly if this could be distracting or confusing to the road user.
- Locations where improved delineation of the highway alignment is needed.

C.3 General Criteria

- Roundabouts and signalized intersections.
- Urban streets, particularly with high speed, high volumes, or frequent turning movements.
- Urban streets of any category experiencing high night time volumes or speeds or that have frequent signalization or turning movements.
- Areas frequently congested with vehicular and/or pedestrian traffic.
- Pedestrian and bicyclist crossings (intersections or mid-block locations)
- Transit stops and hubs, passenger rail stations.
- Areas such as entertainment districts, sporting arenas, shopping centers, beach access points, parks, and other locations that generate higher volumes of pedestrian activity.
- Schools, places of assembly, , or other pedestrian or bicyclist generators.
- High density land use areas.
- Central business districts.
- Junctions of major highways in rural areas.
- Rest areas/picnic shelters/trail heads/recreational facilities.

D TYPES OF LUMINAIRES

Examples of common types of lighting are identified and discussed below. Other types of lighting may be desired and currently in use for specific applications.

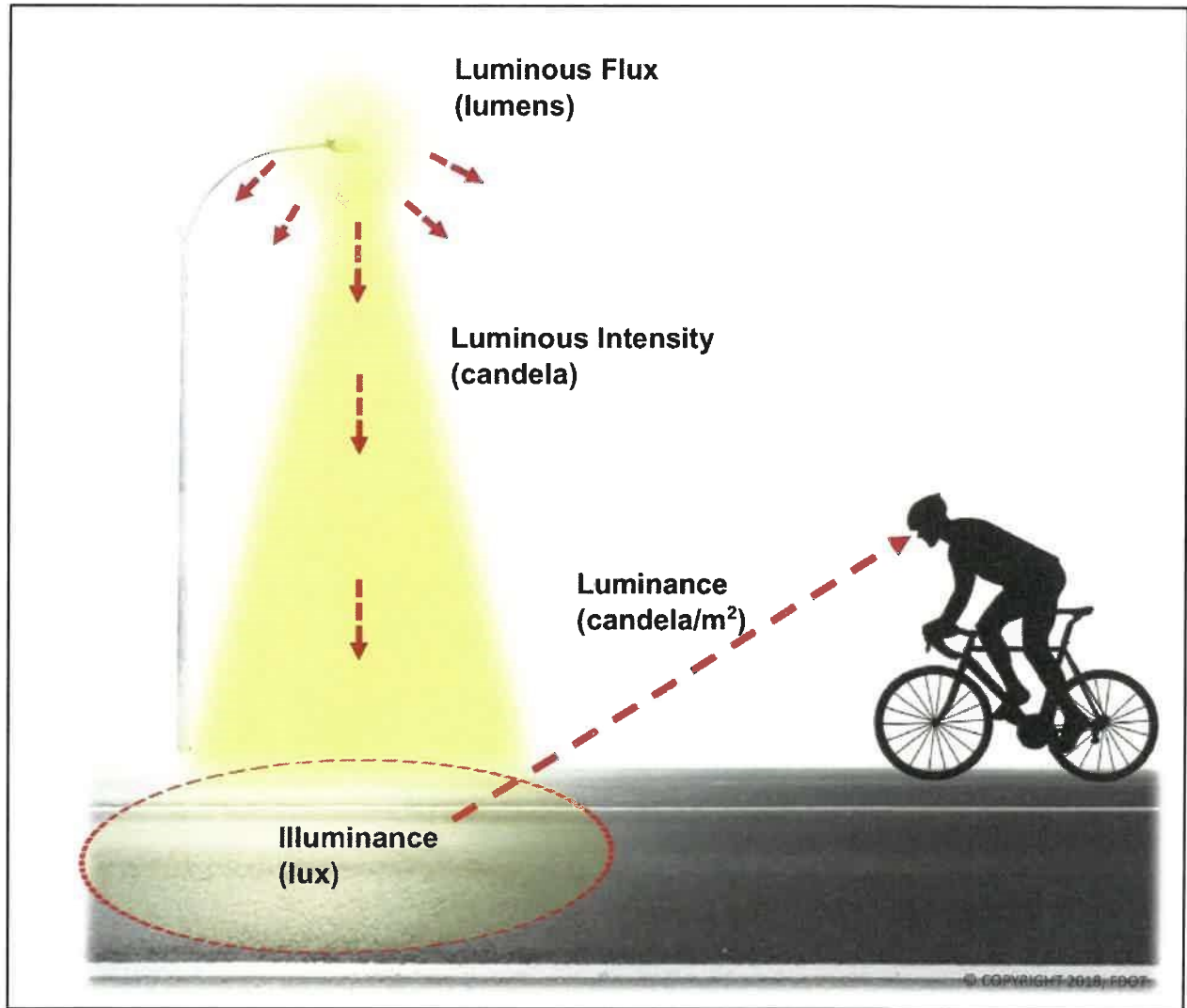
- Light Emitting Diode (LED) – is the preferred light source for street lighting. Light produced by LED lamps have a CCT of 4000°K to 6000°K which is a white to bluish color. The average rated life for LED can vary from 50,000 to 100,000 hours. To provide sufficient lumen levels for roadway applications, most LED fixtures have an initial luminous efficiency of around 75 lumens per watt.
- High Pressure Sodium (HPS) Lamps –Light produced by HPS lamps has a correlated color temperature (CCT) around 2100°K which is a warm yellow color. The average rated life for an HPS lamp is from 24,000 to 30,000 hours. HPS lamps have a very high initial luminous efficiency of over 100 lumens per watt.
- Metal Halide (MH) Lamps – is used for overhead lighting of commercial parking lots, sports facilities, retail stores and street lighting. Light produced by MH lamps has a CCT of 3800°K to 4000°K which is a white color. The average rated life of a MH lamp can vary from 9,000 to 20,000 hours. MH lamps have a high initial luminous efficiency of around 75 - 100 lumens per watt.

E LIGHTING DESIGN TECHNIQUES

The accepted methods for achieving a given lighting condition are known as either level of illuminance or level of luminance. Both methods of calculation are dependent upon light being reflected toward the observer's eye. Horizontal illuminance is used for intersections and interchanges and includes a variable for surface type. Horizontal and vertical illuminance is the preferred method for pedestrian areas. The luminance method can be used for straight roadways and streets, based upon the appropriate choice of surface type.

Figure 6 – 1 Illuminance and Luminance illustrates how illuminance and luminance are measured. Illuminance is the measure of the amount of light flux falling on a surface and is measured in foot candles. Luminance is a measure of the amount of light flux leaving a surface and is measured in candelas per meter squared.

Figure 6 – 1 Illuminance and Luminance



E.1 Illuminance

The illuminance method determines the amount of light falling on the roadway surface or on vertical surfaces from the roadway lighting system. Because the amount of light seen by the driver is the portion that reflects from the pavement towards the driver, and because different pavements exhibit varied reflectance characteristics, different illuminance levels are needed for each type of standard roadway surface. Illuminance is easily calculated and measurable and is not observer or pavement dependent.

E.2 Luminance

The luminance method determines how “bright” the road is by determining the amount of light reflected from the pavement in the direction of the driver. It uses the reflective characteristics (R-classification) noted in Table 6 – 1 Road Surface Classifications for the standard roadway surface types and a specific observer position.

The R-classification system is a measure of the lightness (white to black) and specularly (shininess) of roadway surfaces. A system of pavement reflectance values divides the pavement characteristics into four categories: R1, R2, R3 and R4. These categories are based upon the [*American National Standard Practice for Roadway Lighting*](#) and have been adopted by **AASHTO** in their [*Roadway Lighting Design Guide*](#).

Table 6 – 1 Road Surface Classifications

| Class | Q0* | Description | Mode of Reflectance |
|-------|------|--|------------------------------|
| R1 | 0.10 | Portland cement concrete road surface. Asphalt road surface with a minimum of 12% of the aggregates composed of artificial brightener or aggregates. | Mostly diffuse |
| R2 | 0.07 | Asphalt road surface with an aggregate composed of minimum 60% gravel (size greater than 0.4 in.). Asphalt road surface with 10 to 15% artificial brightener in aggregate mix. (Not normally used in North America). | Mixed (diffuse and specular) |
| R3 | 0.07 | Asphalt road surface (regular and carpet seal) with dark aggregates (e.g., trap rock, blast furnace slag); rough texture after some months of use typical highways). | Slightly specular. |
| R4 | 0.08 | Asphalt road surface with very smooth texture. | Mostly specular. |

* Q₀ = representative mean luminance coefficient.

E.3 Lighting Design Levels

The level of illumination for streets and highways should not be less than those shown in Table 6 – 2 Illuminance and Luminance Design Values. When adding supplemental lighting for pedestrian activity, ensure lighting is compatible with any existing lighting in the corridor and minimizes glare.

These levels are for the purpose of highway safety and do not apply to lighting levels required for crime reduction. Further information may be found in the [*AASHTO Roadway Lighting Design Guide \(2005\)*](#).